West Point:

An intimate picture of the National Military Academy and of the life of the cadet

By

Robert Charlwood Richardson Jr.

Cover created by transcriber and placed in the public domain.

The Project Gutenberg eBook of West Point

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.org. If you are not located in the United States, you will have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

Title: West Point

Author: Robert C. Richardson

Author of introduction, etc.: Hugh Lenox Scott

Release date: June 13, 2018 [eBook #57316]

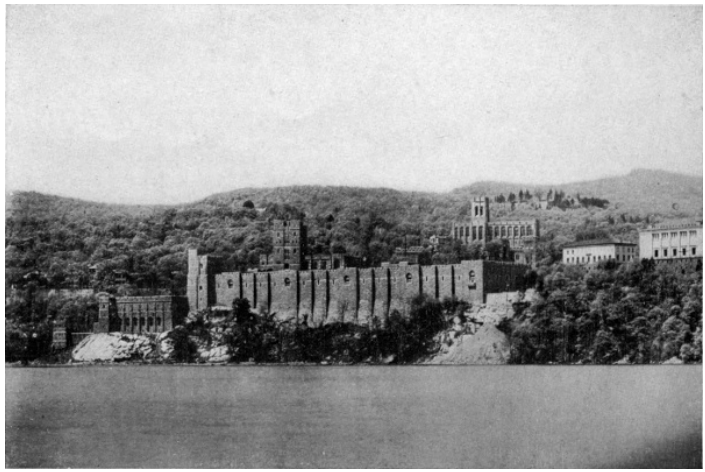
Language: English

Other information and formats: www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/57316

Credits: Produced by MWS, Wayne Hammond and the Online Distributed Proofreading Team at http://www.pgdp.net (This file was

produced from images generously made
available by The
Internet Archive/American Libraries.)

*** START OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK
WEST POINT ***



East View of West Point from the Hudson River

West Point
An Intimate Picture of

the National Military Academy and of the Life of the Cadet

By

Robert Charlwood Richardson, Jr.
Captain, 2nd Cavalry, U. S. Army
Late Assistant Professor of English, U. S. M. A.

Foreword by

Major-General Hugh L. Scott
Chief of Staff, U. S. Army

G. P. Putnam's Sons
New York and London
The Knickerbocker Press
1917

COPYRIGHT, 1917
BY
ROBERT CHARLWOOD RICHARDSON JR.

Second Impression

The Knickerbocker Press, New York

To
THE CORPS OF CADETS
REPRESENTATIVE OF THE BEST AMERICAN
MANHOOD, HEIRS TO
A CENTURY OF UNSURPASSED ACHIEVEMENT
AND HONORABLE
TRADITION—THE MOST HIGHMINDED, LOYAL,
AND
DISCIPLINED BODY OF STUDENT OFFICERS IN
THE WORLD—I AFFECTIONATELY
DEDICATE THIS VOLUME

FOREWORD

West Point played a great part in the gaining of American independence. It was strongly fortified as the key of the Hudson, and as long as it was held by the patriots of the Revolution the New England colonies could not be cut off from the others and conquered one at a time.

The lack of educated officers was greatly felt by the Generals of the Revolution, and this lack was but feebly supplied by trained officers from abroad.

It was mainly through the foresight and patriotism of Washington, Hamilton, and Knox that the Military Academy at West Point was founded, and their memory is still enshrined there.

The Academy had its inception in very small beginnings, first by the assignment of students to an Engineer regiment until the organic act of 1802 created an Academy with ten cadets. A firm establishment was not made, however, until the detail of Colonel Sylvanus Thayer in command in 1817, who laid down the fundamental principles which govern the Academy to this day.

The early graduates of the Academy suffered much from the jealousy of the old veterans of the Revolution who had no use for the educated soldier. These graduates were too few to make themselves felt in the War of 1812, and it was not until General Winfield Scott eulogized their services in the Mexican War that they began to be appreciated by the nation.

Their services in the Civil War were inestimable and are known to all who read history. After the Spanish-American War of 1898, the then Secretary of War,

Mr. Elihu Root, reported that the services of the graduates of the Military Academy in that war alone had far more than repaid the cost of the Academy since its foundation in 1802.

For many years the Military Academy was what its name implies, an Academy, but it has expanded from time to time until it is a military university, giving instruction for all branches of the service except the Medical Corps, and securing for each graduate a broad foundation which enables him to specialize in any direction by means of the various special schools for each branch. The glory of West Point, however, is in the West Point character, now well known in every civilized country in the world, with its reputation for fidelity, efficiency, discipline, and general uprightness. The standing army of the United States has always been too small for the tasks that have been laid upon it, and at every crisis it has had to train large forces of citizen soldiers summoned from civil life for the emergency. These citizen-soldiers, as well as the Regular Army itself, rely upon the scientific education and high character of the West Point graduate to keep the art of war abreast, if not a little ahead, of the times, and for the initiative and informing leaven to permeate the mass and to cause the firm progress of discipline and uprightness throughout the whole.

Shortly after the Mexican War a verse was added to the old West Point song of Benny Havens:

“Their [graduates] blood has watered western plains
And northern wilds of snow,
Has dyed deep red the Everglades,
And walls of Mexico.”

Since that time they have shed it copiously in Cuba, China, and the Philippines, and they are now about to take their places with comrades from civil life fighting for liberty and democracy on the battlefields of France.

HUGH L. SCOTT.

WASHINGTON, D. C.,
May, 1917.

PREFACE

This book is intended to give, aside from a brief historical sketch of West Point, something of the feelings of the cadet from the moment that he reports for duty until he graduates four years later. Perhaps some of my fellow West Pointers will disagree with me in regard to my interpretation of their feelings, but what I have written thereon is drawn from my own experience and from many conversations with cadets of to-day. The customs, traditions, methods of training of the Academy are, I believe, unique, and they make an unforgettable impression upon the cadet. Especially does he become imbued with an almost indefinable influence that we of the Academy call the Spirit of West Point, and in the pages that follow I have tried to seize and translate into words this spirit of the institution. I have greatly enjoyed writing these pages about West Point, a subject very

dear to my heart, and I offer this book to the public in the hope that my fellow countrymen may become better acquainted with the aims and ideals of their National Military Academy.

It gives me the greatest pleasure to acknowledge here my appreciation and thanks to Lieutenant Colonel L. H. Holt, U. S. A., Professor of English and History U. S. M. A., not only for his helpful suggestions and criticisms, but for his encouragement and unselfish interest in the preparation of this book.

I also wish to acknowledge the courtesy of the Reverend Herbert Shipman of New York, formerly Chaplain at the Military Academy, in allowing me to use his poem *The Corps*, with which I close the volume.

Since this book has gone to press, Colonel John Biddle, the Superintendent, has been promoted to the grade of Brigadier-General and relieved from the command of West Point. He has been succeeded by Colonel Samuel E. Tillman, Retired, who until 1910 was the Professor of Chemistry and Electricity at the Military Academy. Colonel Tillman perhaps more than any officer in the Army is better qualified for this important position. He is a graduate of West Point, to whose advancement he has devoted most of his life and he has made an exhaustive study of its needs. His appointment by the President seems to be particularly felicitous for he possesses a most intimate knowledge of the Military Academy. All West Pointers rejoice that West Point is in such good hands.

ROBERT CHARLWOOD RICHARDSON, JR.

WEST POINT, N. Y.,
May, 1917.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER		PAGE
I.—	IN THE DAYS OF THE REVOLUTION	1
II.—	THE FIRST HUNDRED YEARS	19
III.—	THE REALIZATION OF AN ARCHITECT'S DREAM	37
IV.—	THE POWERS THAT BE	75
V.—	"BEAST BARRACKS"—BLESSED ARE THE MEEK FOR THEY SHALL INHERIT THE EARTH	101
VI.—	BENDING THE TWIG	127
VII.—	THE DISCIPLINE OF THE MIND	163
VIII.—	GROWING MUSCLES	194
IX.—	LESSONS FROM MARS	213
X.—	HENCE, LOATHED MELANCHOLY!	244

XI.— Strengthening the Moral Fiber 276
XII.— Spiritual Influences 291
XIII.— The Spirit of West Point 300
Appendix 305

ILLUSTRATIONS

PAGE

East View of West Point from the Hudson River *Frontispiece*
The Spirit of West Point 2
Artillery Target Practice 6
Major Sylvanus Thayer, "The Father of the Military Academy"
From the Painting by Thomas Sully, Library, U.S.M.A. 24
Class Formation in the Area of Barracks 38
The Administration Building 40

THE ADMINISTRATION BUILDING AND RIDING HALL 42

COLONEL JONATHAN WILLIAMS, CORPS OF ENGINEERS, FIRST SUPERINTENDENT OF THE MILITARY ACADEMY
From the Painting by Thomas Sully, Library, U.S.M.A. 44

COLONEL JOSEPH G. SWIFT, FIRST GRADUATE OF THE MILITARY ACADEMY
From the Painting by Thomas Sully, Library, U.S.M.A. 46

CADETS AT EQUITATION IN THE WORLD'S LARGEST RIDING HALL (600 FT. × 150 FT.) 48

THE CARVED MANTEL IN THE HALL OF THE ACADEMIC BOARD
The Nine Great Warriors of the World. Sculptor, Laurie 50

THE NORTH CADET BARRACKS 52

THE CHAPEL 56

THE INTERIOR OF THE CHAPEL 58

VIEW UP THE HUDSON RIVER FROM TROPHY POINT 66

"SPOONING" ON FLIRTATION WALK 68

THE SUPERINTENDENT'S QUARTERS
Built in 1820 78

COLONEL JOHN BIDDLE, CORPS OF ENGINEERS, SUPERINTENDENT 80

"BEAST BARRACKS"—DRAWING MATTRESSES 102

REPORTING FOR DUTY 104

TWO HOURS AFTER REPORTING 108

THE INTERIOR OF A CADET'S ROOM IN BARRACKS 114

MOVING FROM BARRACKS TO CAMP 118

A FIRST LESSON IN SALUTING 122

MARCHING TO BARRACKS FROM DINNER
The Academic Buildings 154

THE EXTERIOR OF THE GYMNASIUM 196

GYMNASTIC EXERCISES 200

THE ATHLETIC FIELD 208

SETTING UP DRILL ON THE PLAIN 210

PARADE ON THE PLAIN 230

AT TARGET PRACTICE ON THE FLATS 236

AT P. M. E. DRILL
Building a Pontoon Bridge 240

A REVIEW FOR THE CHIEF OF THE STAFF OF THE ARMY 288

GRADUATION—PRESIDENT WILSON ADDRESSING THE GRADUATING CLASS
"We'll bid farewell to Cadet gray and don the Army blue" 302



The Spirit of West Point

WEST POINT

CHAPTER I
IN THE DAYS OF THE REVOLUTION

Despite the successful attempts of the architect to give to the magnificent new buildings at West Point a mediæval character, there is nothing about them to suggest a feeling of oldness, a feeling that they are linked with the history of the place. Not until one wanders among the ruins of old Fort Putnam, explores the crumbling works of the chain of Redoubts on the surrounding hills, or rambles over the débris of Fort Constitution on Constitution Island, does he feel the flavor of age, the romance of West Point of the past. It is only then that the imagination races back over the years to the days of the Revolution where it pauses to rebuild the stirring events that filled the daily lives of our ancestors in their desperate struggle for our independence. Looking backward through the vista of more than a century the most commonplace happenings seem powdered with the golden dust of romance. Interwoven with each event are the names of the men who helped to make possible these free United States: Washington, Hamilton, Knox; and of him who was almost successful in thwarting their efforts, the traitor Benedict Arnold.

As far back as the time of the French and Indian Wars both the Americans and British recognized the great value of the control of the Hudson River. It would seem, therefore, that when the Revolution broke out both sides would take every means to seize and fortify the most strategic points along its banks.

Strange to say, the Americans were as indifferent about its control as the British, so that the Revolution was in progress for three years before West Point, the natural key to the river's defense, was fortified.

During the Revolution the British were operating from Manhattan on the south and Canada on the north as bases. Had they controlled the Hudson, they could have separated the eastern from the middle colonies, which division would have prevented the patriots from military combination and from interchanging the necessary commodities for both sections.

Immediately after the battles of Concord and Lexington, the Congress of New York, acting upon a suggestion from the Continental Congress, sent a commission to the Highlands to select "the most proper place for erecting one or more fortifications." Constitution Island, and the sites where Forts Montgomery and Clinton[1] were afterwards built, were chosen. Nothing much was accomplished, however, in the way of fortifications despite the appointment of another commission that recommended the absolute necessity for works at West Point opposite Constitution Island.

Washington, accompanied by General Heath, finally sailed up the river in 1776, and General Heath tells us that "a glance at West Point without going on shore evinced that this post was not to be neglected." Meanwhile the Revolution dragged on into its third year, 1778, but still no fortifications at West Point. Due to Washington's persistence, work was begun there early in January, 1778. General Parsons with his brigade arrived at West Point on the 20th of

January and began the erection of defenses. The weather was extremely cold, provisions were scarce, the men inadequately clothed, and the troops poorly supplied with the proper implements to carry on their labor. Altogether, a very depressing and discouraging situation confronted Parsons's men as they debouched upon the Plain and surveyed their surroundings. If any thought could have given them courage it must have been the reflection that at least they were somewhat better off than their comrades in arms down at Valley Forge, who, despite their wretched condition, were bravely keeping alive the patriotic fires of the Revolution.

What a contrast was that first sight of West Point to Parsons's troops to that offered today! Instead of the beautiful level parade ground surrounded by fine granite buildings they found an undulating plain covered by a growth of yellow pines ten or fifteen feet high, without house or habitation. The only point of similarity was the snow, waist high. After strenuous efforts to get logs from the neighboring hills, a few rude huts were hastily thrown together, and then, at the end of three weeks, the soldiers fell to work with a will, building Fort Clinton under the direction of a splendid young French engineer by the name of de la Radière. The cold was most intense, but the men went up the river, cut the timber for the Fort, and assembled it so that when the river was open, it might be floated down to the Point. Their hard daily toil was not relieved by any diversions in the evening, for West Point was a veritable wilderness. General Parsons, in writing to Colonel Wadsworth, said of West Point, "to a contemplative mind that delights in a lonely retreat from the world 'tis as beautiful as Sharon, but affords to the man

who loves the society of the world a prospect nearly allied to the shades of death.... News arrives here by accident only." The poor soldiers had to repair night after night to their little log huts and get what pleasure they could from one another's society.

The rigors of the winter and the hardships to which the Revolutionary soldiers were accustomed overwhelmed the delicate constitution of the brilliant young de la Radière. Unhappily, he contracted a severe cold that culminated in consumption from which he died the following mid-summer. Another European, attracted by the justice of the Revolutionary cause, succeeded de la Radière. Thaddeus Kosciusko, a Pole of education and culture, joined Parsons's officers, with whom he became a great favorite, not only on account of his engineering ability but by reason of his charming manners, soft and conciliating, and by the elevation of his mind. One officer wrote that he took much pleasure in accompanying Kosciusko with his theodolite measuring the heights of the surrounding mountains.

Today Kosciusko's name is more familiar to West Pointers than de la Radière's, for an enchanting little garden, a tiny retreat hanging on to the cliff near the river, bears his name, and a monument, in the northeast corner of the Plain near Port Clinton that he helped build, commemorates his devotion to the Revolutionary cause.

Kosciusko's presence and energy put new life into the work of construction. Shortly afterwards, when orders came from Washington to expedite the completion of all of the forts, Parsons and Kosciusko, under the direction of Colonel Rufus Putnam, immediately commenced excavations for Fort

Putnam.[2] The men now daily trudged up the small hill back of the Plain and began making clearings for the fort's foundation. It was hard laborious work, extremely fatiguing, and, to add to the men's discomfiture, they were greatly annoyed by large rattlesnakes with which the hill top seemed to swarm.

While the land defenses were being so well prepared, steps were taken to prevent enemy ships from passing up the Hudson. The topography of West Point and the adjacent country lent itself most admirably to the plan of obstructing the river.

The Hudson, as it comes down from Newburgh a straight course of nine miles, strikes West Point, where it is deflected eastward for a quarter of a mile, flowing between Constitution Island and the steep cliffs of the Point before again turning south. Any British sailing vessel coming up the river from New York would, upon rounding Gee's Point, lose a great deal of its speed on account of the swift current, and if stopped by some obstruction could be held under the fire of the batteries on both shores. General Putnam, therefore, through his Quartermaster-General, contracted with the Sterling Iron Works of Noble, Townsend and Co., for an iron chain 500 feet long, each link about two feet long, to be made of the best Sterling iron 2¼ inches square, with a swivel to every hundred feet and a clevis to every thousand feet, for which the government was to pay $440 for every ton weight of chain and anchors.[3]



Photo White Studio

Artillery Target Practice

The chain was to obstruct the navigation of the river. It was stretched across the narrowest part on April 30, 1778, and fastened at West Point in the second small cove west of Gee's Point, and on Constitution Island where the present small boathouse and landing-place stand. Very large logs, sixteen or more feet long, a little pointed at the ends to lessen opposition to the force of the water on flood and ebb, were used to buoy up the great weight of the obstruction. During the winter it was taken up, because the ice in the river was an effective blockade, but when spring came the work of 280 men was needed to lay it across the stream.

Meanwhile, Kosciusko labored strenuously on the forts, so that by June, 1778, the work on the fort in the northeast corner of the Plain begun by de la Radière in the January past, was completed and

given the name of Fort Arnold. Later, when Benedict Arnold turned traitor, its name became Fort Clinton. A small portion of the wall stands today. Washington, on a visit to West Point in September, 1778, paid Kosciusko a great compliment, stating to General Duportail, his chief engineer, that he need have no uneasiness as to Kosciusko's ability.

Additional troops were at this time sent to West Point because Washington feared an attack by the British. In the spring of 1779, General McDougall was at West Point with three brigades; there was one on Constitution Island, and the main body of the Army was near Haverstraw under General Putnam. Washington, ever watchful, viewed with great concern the presence of the British in the strong position of Stony Point because he considered this post a serious menace to West Point. Wishing to be rid of them he sent for Anthony Wayne, gave him a corps of light infantry, and directed him to capture the British fort. A better man than Wayne could not have been selected for the job. On the 15th of July, Wayne paraded his troops for a minute inspection, after which, instead of dismissing them, he marched upon Stony Point, which at midnight he successfully assaulted with the bayonet. The news of his brilliant exploit was conveyed to Washington in the following refreshing message:

WEST POINT, 16 July 1779.
2 o'clock a. m.

DEAR GEN'L:

The fort and garrison with Colonel Johnston are ours. Our officers and men behaved like men who

are determined to be free.

Yours most sincerely,
ANT'Y WAYNE.

To supervise better the defenses of the Hudson River, Washington moved his headquarters to West Point, in July, 1779, where he remained until November of that year, occupying "Moore's House," a structure that stood in Washington valley near the shore of the Hudson, a short distance from the northeast corner of the present cemetery. It was built by John Moore prior to 1749, and called by all the people in the vicinity "Moore's Folly" on account of its pretentiousness.

General Clinton tried to draw Washington out into the open country for a campaign, but the American Commander was too astute and Clinton dared not attack the Revolutionary forces at bay at West Point because of the dangers of a campaign in the Highlands.

Spurred on by Washington's presence and by his orders, Kosciusko and the troops completed Fort Putnam and Redoubts Webb and Wyllys in the summer. This work necessitated for fatigue duty each day 2500 men, a large percentage of the garrison. Even at this early period, West Point was the Mecca for distinguished Americans and foreigners. Nearly every Revolutionary commander visited the Post at one time or another during the war, and while Washington was here, Count de Luzerne, the French minister, was his guest.

Before Washington left the Post in late November, the troops in the Highlands were distributed to their

winter stations. Little money was available to equip properly the soldiers but they struggled on bearing their burdens and hardships that we of today might be free. That they were not fighting for the present alone, without a thought as to those who would come after them, is revealed to us by an entry in a diary of General Heath who was then in command of all the troops and Posts on the Hudson:

> 25th Nov. 1779. The troops were moving to their different places of cantonment; many of the soldiers (as fine men as ever stood in shoes) were marched barefooted over the hard frozen ground, and with an astonishing patience.
>
> *Remember these things, ye Americans in future times!*

In the spring of 1780, Washington sent Baron Steuben to West Point to drill the troops, for he feared an attack by the British. This accomplished officer, a Major-General in the American Army, had seen seven campaigns in the service of Frederick the Great, so that he brought to his task a ripe experience. With Prussian thoroughness he commenced drilling both the old soldiers and recruits of the command, with the result that by summer he was able to write to Washington that he had formed a corps of light infantry "that I dare flatter myself will be the admiration of our allies as much as the terror of our enemies."

Notwithstanding the patriotic work of the officers and men of the Army, Washington was aware that America as well as Great Britain was getting tired of

the war. “There never has been a stage of the war,” he said, “in which dissatisfaction has been so general and so alarming.” Governor Reed of Pennsylvania said in August, 1780: “It is obvious that the bulk of the people are weary of the war.”

The stage was therefore set for the most dramatic event of the Revolution, the treason of Benedict Arnold. Had Arnold succeeded at this period of the Revolution, the hour of darkness and depression, in selling West Point to the British, we would probably still be English colonies. The loss of the Post would have shaken the morale of the American commanders, not to speak of the paralysis of any movement upon which Washington’s army might have been engaged at that particular time.

For more than a year previous to his assumption of the command of West Point, Arnold had been hatching nefarious schemes to betray the Americans. He needed money badly, due to his extravagances while in Philadelphia. His conduct had not been entirely satisfactory while in that city and open resentment was expressed on account of his preference for the British faction, but because of his military capacity he was held in high esteem by Washington. His abilities led Washington to offer him the command of the left wing of the army then in the field, but he pleaded that he was unfit for field duty by reason of the wound that he had received at Saratoga, and requested the command of West Point. His desires were respected and on August 5, 1780, he assumed command of his new post with headquarters at the Robinson House.[4]

Once at West Point, Arnold saw his chance to gain rank and pay from the British. He immediately

entered into a lively correspondence with Major André, the Adjutant-General of the British forces in America, who was addressed as “Mr. John Anderson, Merchant.” Arnold’s communications were all signed “Gustavus.” When negotiations for the betrayal of West Point had reached a crisis, Arnold requested a personal interview with a representative of the British. General Clinton then sent Major André up the river on the sloop *Vulture* which anchored near Haverstraw. An agent of Arnold’s, one Joshua Hett Smith, returned at midnight, September 21, with Major André in full uniform, a landing being made a short distance north of the West Shore Railroad tunnel south of Haverstraw. Arnold and André then went to Smith’s house in West Haverstraw. They were challenged by an American sentinel and it was here that André entered the American lines.

While the two officers were in consultation, the American commander across the river brought a four-pounder within range of the *Vulture*, and opened a heavy fire upon her, causing her commander to shift his anchorage downstream. Great was André’s dismay at seeing his vessel forced away, for now he was in the American lines and far from New York. He had been assured of a safe return to his own lines, and disliked the idea of traveling alone by land to New York. Moreover, he was very reluctant to take off his uniform but at Arnold’s advice he changed into civilian clothing, thereby foolishly placing himself in the light of a spy, if caught within the American lines. Arnold also gave André important papers regarding the strength of West Point defenses.

It is not difficult to imagine the state of André’s mind at finding himself in a false position and at the same time disobeying General Clinton’s orders, which were

not to change his uniform under any circumstances nor receive any papers from Arnold. Under the guidance of Joshua Smith, he crossed the river at King's Ferry (near Stony Point of today) and proceeded south toward New York.

Although furnished with a pass by Arnold, he was detained by three American patriots near Tarrytown, searched, and turned over to Colonel Jameson at North Castle.

Meanwhile, Arnold was at his Headquarters at the Robinson House awaiting events, and Washington was on his way from Hartford to West Point. Had Arnold succeeded it is probable that Washington would have fallen into the enemy's hands at this time, an accident that would have ruined the Revolution. When Washington was opposite West Point he sent two aides to inform Arnold of his arrival. They proceeded to the Robinson House and were enjoying Arnold's hospitality at breakfast when Jameson's messenger arrived with a note announcing André's capture. The news must have fallen upon Arnold like a thunderbolt, but with perfect *sangfroid* he excused himself, rushed upstairs to tell his wife of the danger, ordered his horse, sent for the coxswain of his barge, and then calmly returned to his guests whom he told it was necessary for him to cross to West Point to prepare for the reception of General Washington. Instead, he rapidly made his way down the river and boarded the *Vulture* which took him to New York.

Major André was tried by court-martial, found guilty of being a spy, and sentenced to be hanged. Numerous letters were written to Washington begging that André's life be spared. Arnold himself

addressed to his former chief a long communication exonerating André and taking upon himself the blame for André's presence in disguise within the American lines. Even Hamilton was touched, saying: "Never perhaps did any man suffer death with more justice or deserve it less."

André accepted his fate like a brave soldier but he revolted from the ignominy of being hanged. When all efforts to change the mode of his death failed, he personally appealed to Washington in the following splendid letter:

From Maj. André to General Washington, 1780.

TAPPAN.
The 1st. of Oct., 1780.

SIR:

Buoy'd above the terror of death by the consciousness of a life devoted to honorable pursuits and stained with no action that can give me remorse, I trust that the request that I make to your Excellency, at this serious period and which is to soften my last moments will not be rejected.

Sympathy toward a soldier will surely induce your Excellency and a military tribunal to adapt the mode of my death to the feelings of a man of honor. Let me hope, Sir, that if aught in my character impresses you with esteem towards me, if aught in my misfortune marks me the victim of policy and not of resentment, I shall experience the operation of those feelings in your breast by being informed that I am not to die on a gibbet.

I have the honor to be your Excellency's most obedient and most humble servant,

JOHN ANDRÉ,
Adj. General to the British Army.

His request, however, was not granted and in the early afternoon of October 2, 1780, arrayed in full dress uniform he paid the penalty on the scaffold. His body was buried beneath his gibbet but removed to England in 1831 where it rests in Westminster Abbey.

West Point and the Revolutionary cause was saved to the Americans! The shock of Arnold's traitorous act with its narrowly averted consequences caused Washington to take even more stringent measures for West Point's defense. Orders were issued to continue work on all of the fortifications and during 1781 and 1782, the garrison labored faithfully and uncomplainingly notwithstanding the great sufferings of the men from lack of provisions. At times the stores on hand were numbered by a few barrels of salt pork and a little flour.

Major-General Knox now assumed command of the Post. After the cessation of hostilities he was very busy mustering out troops and putting the garrison in shape.

Despite the poverty that prevailed at West Point, Washington ordered a celebration to be held in honor of the birth of the Dauphin of France, Louis Joseph, the son of Louis XVI., born October, 1781. A magnificent fête was arranged in which all of the troops stationed in the Highlands participated. Upon the Plain at West Point, Major Villefranche erected a

curious edifice, an improvised temple with a grand colonnade of 118 pillars made of the trunks of trees. The entire building was festooned with American and French flags, with designs and emblems, muskets and bayonets fancifully arranged. Washington, with a party of five hundred distinguished guests, assembled in the colonnade for a banquet. A series of thirteen toasts were drunk, each one accompanied by a salute of thirteen cannon. During the evening there was a grand display of fireworks for the troops and a ball for the officers and their guests. This dance, led by General Washington, was the first real West Point hop.

The various details left over from the Revolution were now disposed of by General Knox and his successor, Lieut.-Col. Rochefontaine. The genesis of the Military Academy was foreshadowed by the presence of the Invalid Corps which by act of Congress, 1777, was, among other things, “to serve as a military school for young gentlemen previous to their being appointed to marching regiments.”

The dark days of the Revolution were over and the troops could now rest from their strenuous labors. There were important matters, however, to occupy the leaders, not the least of which was the establishment of an institution for training officers for the Army. No lesson of the war was so well learned as the need for such educated leaders, and immediately the Revolution was over, Washington, Hamilton, and Knox began urging Congress to establish a National Military Academy. Although Washington never lived to see his recommendations carried out, he would have rejoiced, I am sure, to know that Congress three years after his death founded the United States Military Academy, at his

favorite Post, West Point.

CHAPTER II
THE FIRST HUNDRED YEARS

When at last the colonies found themselves free, and realized that they were in no immediate danger from any foe, the thoughts of the people, so long occupied with war, eagerly turned toward the establishment of their new government. It was only natural that the Army, weary of the long struggle for independence, should gladly welcome their release from service, and resume once again the peaceful pursuits of civil life. For seven long years their days had been filled with arduous marches through heat and through snow, with tedious vigils on outposts, or with bloody encounters with the British, and the great mass of the people joyfully hailed the piping times of peace, and without ado they turned their battle-axes into billhooks, and their helmets into beehives.

It could not be expected that during the reaction that followed the Revolution much attention would be given to the subject of military education. As a matter of fact, for seven years this question was allowed to sleep; but Washington, ever on the alert for the welfare of the new country, suggested in his annual message of 1790 to the Congress the

establishment of a National Military Academy. In spite of the great prestige that he enjoyed both as President and as the man who had successfully waged the Revolution, his words were not heeded by Congress until some years afterwards.

The Congress of those days apparently was like our own and needed to have a matter brought to its attention many times before any definite action was taken. Washington undoubtedly appreciated this condition for we find that on numerous occasions he spoke of his plan, telling Congress that “it is an inquiry that cannot be too strongly pursued.” His efforts were not without reward, for in 1794 the grade of Cadet was created, and a military school was established at West Point. This school was composed of the cadets who were by law attached to the Engineer and Artillery Corps of the garrison. In each company there were two of these young men styled “cadets of the Service,” whom the Government aimed to train to become commissioned officers of the Army. There was, however, no organization to the school, nor scientific system of instruction, so that the cadets did about as they pleased, pursuing their studies in a desultory manner.

It was not until the 16th of March, 1802, that the United States Military Academy was definitely established by law. Congress then authorized the President to organize the Corps of Engineers whose cadre contained, in addition to the officers, ten cadets. West Point was designated as the station of the Corps which was to constitute the Military Academy. The next year forty cadets, to be appointed from the artillery troops of the Army, were added and in 1808, 156 additional men.

During the first ten years of its existence the Military Academy was in a most chaotic condition. It was in reality “a foundling barely existing among the mountains, out of sight of, and almost unknown to, its legitimate parents.” It is greatly to be wondered at that the Academy ever survived the terrible throes of its birth. Almost no provisions for its existence were made by Congress. The cadets were lodged in an old barrack of the Revolution, called the “Long Barrack,” that occupied the site of the present hotel, and their instruction was given in a wooden building called the “Academy” that stood on the spot of the present Superintendent’s quarters. They were allowed to board around promiscuously, really living from hand to mouth. Among the student body there was very little discipline, but a great deal of idleness and dissipation.

In 1812, a new law placed the school on a firm basis and furnished the principles upon which the institution has been conducted to this moment. Two hundred and fifty cadets were authorized and the respectable sum of twenty-five thousand dollars appropriated for buildings. To offset this good fortune, the Academy had to fight against the hostility of Madison’s Secretary of War, Eustis, who tried his utmost to strangle the new-born institution. But happily the exigencies of the War of 1812 frustrated his hostile designs.

Despite insuperable difficulties, the Academy began to grow, not scientifically, but in a muddling sort of way. Where the Superintendent had heretofore been a rover up and down the Hudson Posts, he now became permanently located at West Point. The professors began to work together with more harmony, going so far as to recommend a broadly

planned course that included most of the subjects studied today. By the Regulations of 1815, the cadets were required to mess at a common table, instead of boarding at private houses, their age limit was fixed at fourteen to twenty, and their uniform was definitely prescribed. A little order was being brought out of chaos. Annual vacations were granted, to commence immediately after the examination in July and to end on the first day of August. Notwithstanding the excellence of the above features, the general condition of this infant school was far from satisfactory. A picture of its inner life is revealed in a letter written in 1815 by Andrew Ellicott, the Professor of Mathematics, to the Secretary of War, in which he states:

> Until I came here the Academy was abandoned by the Professors and a great part of the students from the first of December until, the first of April following every year. This practice I immediately put a stop to, and kept the Academy open two winters, not even excluding Sundays, without the aid of any other Professor or regular assistant. The winter before last, I kept together more than twenty students, 16 of whom were commissioned last July, and last winter more than 80, some of whom would do credit to any country or nation, and will be found among our future rulers. These extra services are not ideal—they are substantial.

Although Professor Ellicott rather emphasizes his

assiduity in his application for extra compensation we must be grateful, at least, for the glimpse he gives us of the state of affairs in 1815.

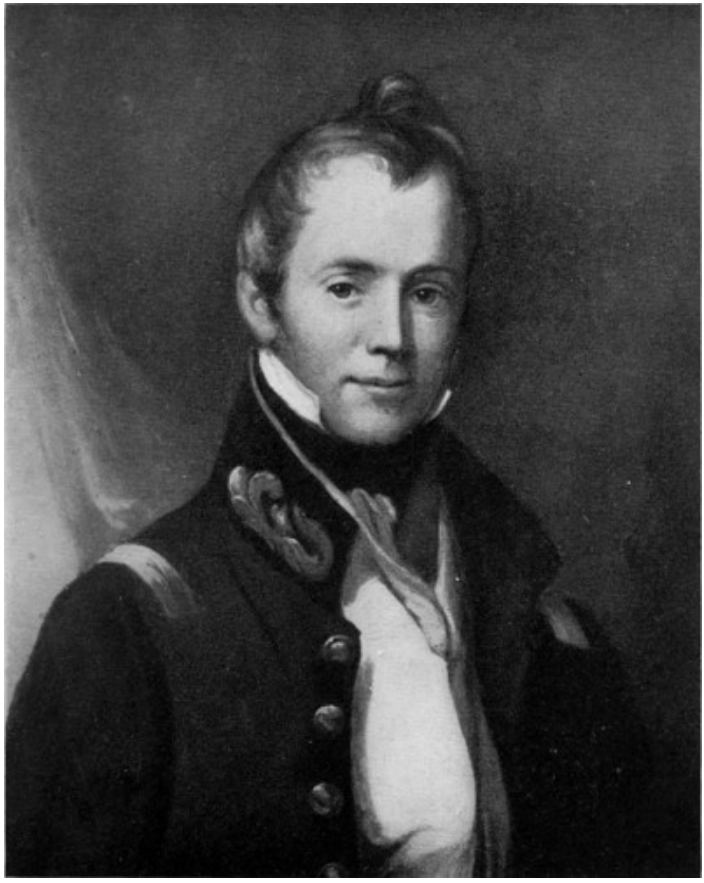
Better days, however, were in store for West Point. That the War Department was not entirely insensible to the handicap under which those at West Point were working, is proven by the circumstance that at this particular time there was in Europe an officer, Major Sylvanus Thayer, who had been sent abroad "to prosecute inquiries and examinations calculated for his improvement in the military art." He was given five thousand dollars for the collection of books, maps, and instruments for the Military Academy. Shortly after his return, he was made Superintendent, relieving Captain Alden Partridge whose administration had not been popular nor very successful. Although Captain Partridge was much criticized by the professors and cadets his farewell address to the "Gentlemen Cadets of the Military Academy" was so high-minded that I am tempted to quote it in full:

> Before I take my leave of you, gentlemen, permit me to impress anew upon your minds some precepts to which I have frequently before this called your attention. Be attentive to your studies, and correct and gentlemanly in your deportment. Pursue with undeviating course the paths of virtue and true honor; and rest assured that although the vicious and the vain may affect to ridicule and despise, they will inwardly respect you, and that you will

> thereby ensure the applause of the good and the great, and, which is of more importance, the approbation of your consciences and of your God.

With the advent of Major Thayer began the golden age of the Academy. This officer was a veteran of the War of 1812 in which he had served with great distinction; he had studied the military schools of France, and had profited by his unusual opportunities to acquire a profound knowledge concerning the conduct of an institution such as the military school over which he was chief.

The great talents that Major Thayer possessed were well employed. For sixteen years he shaped the destiny of the Academy, and with such wisdom and foresight that the broad fundamental principles which he laid down for the school's guidance, govern the institution today.



Major Sylvanus Thayer
"The Father of the Military Academy"

From the Painting by Thomas Sully, Library U.S.M.A.

To him, more than to any one man, is due the elevation of the Military Academy to its high rank among schools of learning both in this country and abroad.

Upon taking over the command, he immediately

drew upon his genius for organization, with the result that the cadets were organized into a battalion of two companies, a "Commandant of Cadets" was created, the classes were for study purposes divided into sections, transfers were made between sections, and weekly reports, showing daily progress in studies, were rendered. Moreover, the system and scale of daily marks, the publication of the *Annual Register*, the introduction of the Board of Visitors, the check-book system, the preponderating influence of the blackboard, and the essential part of the modern Regulations are proofs of his untiring efforts as an executive. The above changes that he effected, and the reforms that he introduced, are a part of the modern organization of West Point. Perhaps no one method has so much influenced the quality of the instruction of the cadets as the blackboard recitations. Major Thayer insisted on this form, although old records show that it was introduced at West Point by Mr. George Baron, a civilian teacher, who in the autumn of 1801 gave to Cadet Swift "a specimen of his mode of teaching at the blackboard." Today it is the prominent feature in Academic instruction.

Major Thayer's success in giving West Point an upward impetus had attracted general attention and observation throughout the country so that appointments were now sought after with avidity. The politicians rejoiced at the Academy's increased importance and the consequent patronage that the appointments offered. Although the present law did not obtain, whereby Congressmen appointed cadets, still it had been the custom for the President to appoint men to West Point upon the recommendation of a Representative. In 1843, a law

was passed that allowed one cadet for each congressional district. Major Thayer was at his own request relieved as Superintendent, after a brilliant administration whose results were so beneficial to the institution as to gain for him from posterity the title of “Father of the Military Academy.”

Could Major Thayer have only peered into the future he would have seen Fame, years later, crowning three of his raw young cadets. One of the lads at West Point under Major Thayer was Edgar Allan Poe, America’s foremost literary genius. He entered West Point July 1, 1830, but after a troublous stay of a little over eight months was dismissed for repeated misconduct. Not a great deal is known of his brief cadet days, but his classmates have stated that he was irritable and morose, and addicted to excessive drinking. He would steal out of barracks sometimes, long after taps, and “run it out” to “Old Benny Havens,” a tavern kept by Benny Havens on the banks of the Hudson about a mile below West Point. Benny Havens’ name is preserved in song and story at West Point, and tales that surrounded the cadet reunions in ye olden days at “Benny’s” are flavored with all the romance of a mythical legend. Old Benny died in 1877 at the ripe age of eighty-nine years, but his name survives in a stirring West Point song that I quote in part:

Come fill your glasses, fellows, and stand up in a
row,
For singing sentimentally we are going for to go,
In the Army there’s sobriety, promotion’s very slow,
So we’ll sing our reminiscences of Benny Havens,
Oh!

* * * * *

To our comrades who have fallen, one cup before we go;
They poured their life-blood freely out *pro bono publico*.
No marble points the stranger to where they rest below!
They lie neglected far away from Benny Havens, Oh!
* * * * *
When you and I and Benny and all the others too,
Are called before the "final Board," our course of life to view,
May we never "fess"[5] on any point, but straight be told to go
And join the Army of the blest at Benny Havens, Oh!

Poe, however, was only one of many who disobeyed the regulations, but he did not care for military life and made no effort to conceal his offenses. Finally he was tried by court-martial. For two weeks prior to his trial he neglected almost all of his studies as a cadet. Two of the specifications against him were for absences from parades and roll calls and two for disobedience of orders, but at the trial, he deliberately pleaded guilty to the latter and not guilty to the former, the most patent and obvious of his offenses. Whether or not he did this from a sense of humor, is not known, but his action was not calculated to help him in the eyes of his superiors. He was dismissed March 6, 1831. Four days later he wrote Major Thayer the following letter:

Letter of Edgar Allan Poe, Lately Cadet, U. S. M. A., to the Superintendent: 1831.
(*Original in the library U. S. M. A.*)

NEW YORK,
Mar. 10, 1831.

SIR:

Having no longer any ties to bind me to my country —no prospects—nor friends—I intend by the first opportunity to proceed to Paris with the view of obtaining through the interest of the Marquis De La Fayette, an appointment (if possible) in the Polish Army. In the event of the interference of France in behalf of Poland this may easily be effected—in all events it will be my only feasible plan of procedure.

The object of this letter is respectfully to request that you will give me such assistance as may be in your power in the furtherance of my views.

A certificate of standing in my class is all that I may have a right to expect.

Anything further—a letter to a friend in Paris—or to the Marquis—would be a kindness which I would never forget.

Most respectfully,
Yr. obt. st.
EDGAR ALLAN POE.

Poe, however, abandoned the plan and little more was heard of his whereabouts by his friends at West Point.

The two other cadets under Major Thayer, were Jefferson Davis and Robert E. Lee, but their history is too well known to bear repetition here. Suffice to say that Jefferson Davis was mischievous and human enough as a cadet to be court-martialed for an escapade.

The prosperity of the Academy continued in spite of its opponents in Congress who, just prior to the Mexican War, came near accomplishing its overthrow, but the brilliant achievements of its graduates in that conflict silenced for a while their mutterings. Many young officers who served with distinction in this war were later to win greater fame in the titanic Civil War. Grant (class of ’43); Sherman (’40); Hancock (’44); Thomas (’40); Meade (’35); Hooker (’30); Sedgwick (’37) participated in the campaigns against the Mexicans.

The nation was given ample proof of the wisdom of Washington, Hamilton, and Knox in their efforts to establish a Military Academy wherein officers might be educated and trained to organize and discipline citizen soldiers, and lead them to victory. At West Point today there are bronze cannon, tattered flags, and mutilated flagstaffs, trophies of the Mexican War that were presented to the Academy by General Winfield Scott, the Commanding General of the Army, who stated, “as under Providence it is mainly to the Military Academy that the United States became indebted for those brilliant achievements and other memorable victories in the same war, I have a lively pleasuring in tendering the seven trophies (semi-national) to the mother of so many accomplished soldiers and patriots.”

The close of the Mexican War found the Military Academy the pet and idol of the National Legislature. All of its requirements were solicitously studied and plenty of funds were forthcoming to supply its wants. As time went on, however, and no foe appeared at our door, the usual indifference on the part of some toward military affairs, and the open hostilities of others, were manifested. As before in its history, the

Academy became the object of numerous attacks, but it ignored them, continuing unobtrusively the preparation of her cadets for their future work, little realizing how important this work was soon to be.

In 1852, Brevet-Colonel R. E. Lee, Corps of Engineers, class of 1829, was appointed Superintendent. Under his administration the course was extended to include five years, embracing more English studies and Military Law. A new riding hall was completed in 1855 which greatly increased the opportunity for cavalry exercises. Colonel Lee, having transferred to the Cavalry arm of the Service, was relieved as Superintendent, April, 1855, because according to law at that time, only Engineer officers could serve as Superintendent.

The year before Lee's administration began, there entered West Point in July, 1851, a cadet, James Abbott McNeill Whistler, aged sixteen years and eleven months, destined to become one of America's greatest artists. Whistler remained three years at West Point when he was discharged for deficiency in chemistry. In speaking in after years of his experiences with this study, he said, "Had silicon been a gas, I would have been a Major-General." He was called up for examination in the subject of chemistry, which also covered the studies of mineralogy and geology, and given silicon to discuss. When called upon to recite, he stated: "I am required to discuss the subject of silicon. Silicon is a gas." "That will do, Mr. Whistler," said the Professor, and the artist soldier retired quickly to private life.

Another story was told of him in an examination in history. "What!" said an officer who was his instructor, "you do not know the date of the Battle of

Buena Vista? Suppose you were to go out to dinner and the company began to talk of the Mexican War, and you, a West Point man, were asked the date of the battle. What would you do?"

"Do," said Whistler, "why, I should refuse to associate with people who would talk of such things at dinner."

Although Whistler was not a success in defining silicon or remembering dates, he excelled in drawing, standing at the head of his class. The Professor of Drawing at the time was Robert W. Weir, an artist of no mean ability himself and of generally recognized standing. For Whistler, Professor Weir always had a high esteem on account of the unusual talent he displayed in the drawing classes. Specimens of his work as a cadet are still preserved at West Point.

In 1860, the rumblings of trouble over the slave question began to be heard even in the secluded Highlands of the Hudson. At first the Southern and Northern cadets ardently advocated the views of their respective States, arguing with all of the warmth and enthusiasm of their young natures but without any particular bitterness. Soon, however, the gathering of the war clouds and the noise of the storm that was brewing brought the Southern cadets face to face with a problem that of its nature was most difficult to solve. Each one had sworn allegiance to the Government and taken an oath to defend it against all enemies. What should they do? To remain and support the Federal Government

meant to fight against their own flesh and blood, yet to resign was to break one's sworn word. As a Southerner myself, I have often reflected upon the mental suffering that those fellow cadets of "the long grey line" must have experienced, trying to decide upon their duty. General Schaff, in *The Spirit of Old West Point*, gives us a vivid picture of those days at the Academy. So much has been written about the cadets who left West Point to fight with the Southern forces that the following data may prove interesting.

At the outbreak of the Civil War there were from the Southern States eighty-six cadets. Of this number sixty-three resigned, from various causes connected with the war, leaving twenty-one who remained loyal to the Government. In the Army, it is a remarkable fact that of the officers of Southern blood appointed from civil life, one half went with the Confederacy, whereas only one fifth of the West Pointers went South. One hundred and sixty-two Southern graduates withstood the terrible strain of fighting their own people, and remained true to the flag.

Although up to the time of the Civil War no graduates of West Point had been appointed to the rank of general officer, the war had not been in progress a year before the country eagerly turned to men from the Academy to lead its armies. In September, 1861, six of the eleven generals in the Regular Army were graduates. At the conclusion of the war sixteen of the seventeen Regular general officers of the line were graduates. Sixty-six graduates rose during the war to the grade of major-general and 112 to that of brigadier-general of volunteers, which means that more than one third of the graduates engaged in the war rose to the grade of

general officer. Nine received the thanks of Congress for conspicuous gallantry.

Turning to the Confederate forces, we find a similar state of affairs. Of the West Pointers in the Confederate service, eighteen were made full generals, fifteen lieutenant-generals, forty major-generals, and eighty-eight brigadier-generals. In command of all was Jefferson Davis, President of the Confederacy, and a West Pointer.

The most famous West Pointer on the Union side was Ulysses S. Grant, class of 1843, but scarcely less noted were Sheridan (’53), and Sherman (’45). Other graduates whose services were most conspicuous follow: George H. Thomas (’40), Meade (’35), Hooker (’35), Sedgwick (’37), McClellan (’46), Halleck (’39), McPherson (’53), Rosecrans (’42), Warren (’50), Pleasanton (’44), and Gregg (’55).

On the Confederate side we find Lee (’29), Early (’37), Jackson (’46), A. S. Johnston (’26), A. P. Hill (’47), Daniel H. Hill (’42), and Longstreet (’42), Ewell (’40), and Stuart (’54).

At the conclusion of the Civil War, a struggle between three million combatants, all of the armies in the field on both sides were commanded by graduates; nearly all of the corps; a large majority of the divisions; the staff corps or organization of supply of both forces, and many of the brigades. Every important battle of the war was commanded on one or both sides by a graduate—generally both. This was the verdict of the end of the great conflict after a test to which no other institution of learning has ever been put.

After the Civil War the Academy began to drop out of public notice because the people were more interested in the commercial development of the country. Apathy on the part of the public has never, however, affected West Point's attitude toward its duty, so that year after year graduates were sent forth to fight the Indians upon the Plains where they underwent great hardships of which the country was ignorant.

Then came the Spanish War to test again the product of the Academy, but the work of the graduates in Cuba and the Philippines gave ample proof that the metal was still good and well stamped.

With the advent of Colonel A. L. Mills as Superintendent, the Academy received a fresh impetus and many important changes were effected. The Corps in 1900 was increased by one hundred cadets, hazing in all of its forms was practically abolished after a long bitter fight, and elaborate plans were inaugurated for the enlargement and rebuilding of West Point. In this connection the late Colonel Charles W. Larned, Professor of Drawing, distinguished himself. It is largely due to his indefatigable efforts and to the foresight and ability of the late General Mills, and to the Secretary of War, Elihu Root, that West Point has its magnificent new buildings. Their construction extended over a long period, from 1904 to 1911, during which time the courses were expanded and improved to meet the needs of our new Army.

Once again the country is at war, this time with the most powerful and resourceful enemy that our citizens have been called upon to face.

The graduates of West Point will prove as true to their traditions in this struggle as they have in the past, and West Point knows that they will return in triumph to their Alma Mater who ever stands ready to press the cup of greeting to the lips of all honorable and loyal sons.

CHAPTER III
THE REALIZATION OF AN ARCHITECT'S DREAM

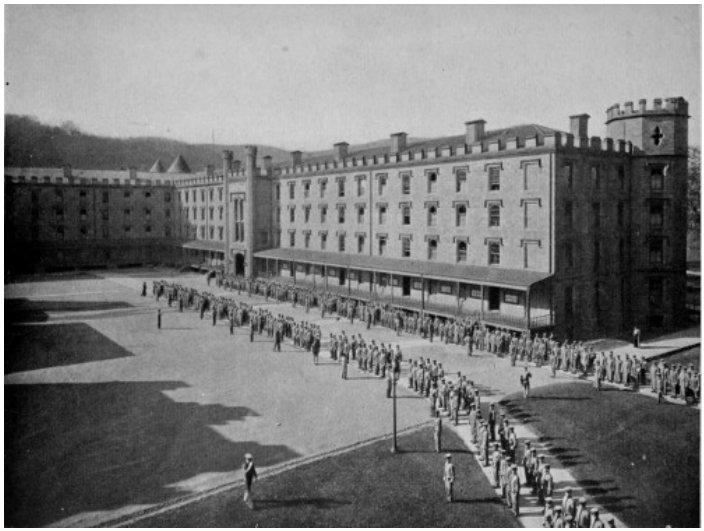
When the springtime rolls around and the Hudson River is at its best, the annual influx of visitors begins to arrive at West Point. Trains and boats disgorge official visitors, tourists, boy scouts, delegations of various brotherhoods and sisterhoods, and picknickers galore. Little groups of them appear in all corners of the Post, in the area of Barracks, on the Plain, in the Public Buildings, and along the famous Flirtation Walk. Their chief interest, of course, is to catch a glimpse of the cadets, either *en masse* or individually. When the Corps starts either to meals or to dress parade, they gather along the sidewalks, or at the visitors' seats to watch the marching. Some openly express their enthusiasm and pleasure, genuinely delighted at everything they see, while others remain silent and phlegmatic apparently taking only a languid interest in their surroundings.

As I watch my fellow-countrymen strolling about the grounds of the Academy, I often wonder what are their impressions of this institution. To many, of course, the historic traditions of West Point, as well as its functions and purposes, are thoroughly familiar, but to a vast majority West Point is a closed book. They see the cadets, the drills, the buildings, perhaps parade, but they never have an opportunity to acquaint themselves with the intimate life of the Academy. They do not derive the full benefit from their visit, because they are in the position of regarding the institution from the outside. In many cases, the spirit of investigation is restrained by a feeling of timidity upon their part, a feeling of awe in the face of military surroundings.

The Army is so little known to the people in the United States, that, to the average civilian, there seems to be some sort of mystery surrounding military life, and the presence of a man in uniform, with a waist belt and pistol, doing plain police duty, appears to act as a check on every natural impulse. The pleasure of his visit is consequently marred to some extent and he feels somewhat ill-at-ease. He wants to investigate with greater freedom, but he shrinks from being told that his projects are "Verboten." Upon his departure he must of necessity have but a superficial idea of the great work done at the Academy, unless he has been fortunate enough to have some friend stationed at West Point who dissipates the apparently cold atmosphere of military life.

I have often regretted, as I watched the crowds swarming around, that each individual might not carry away a real appreciation of West Point, instead of leaving with only the most superficial impressions.

Unless one has graduated from the Academy it is impossible to seize fully the spirit of the institution, or have a clear idea of its intimate life. My long familiarity with West Point, both as a cadet and as an officer, prompts me to portray for the American people the history, aims, ideals, and spirit of their National Military Academy.



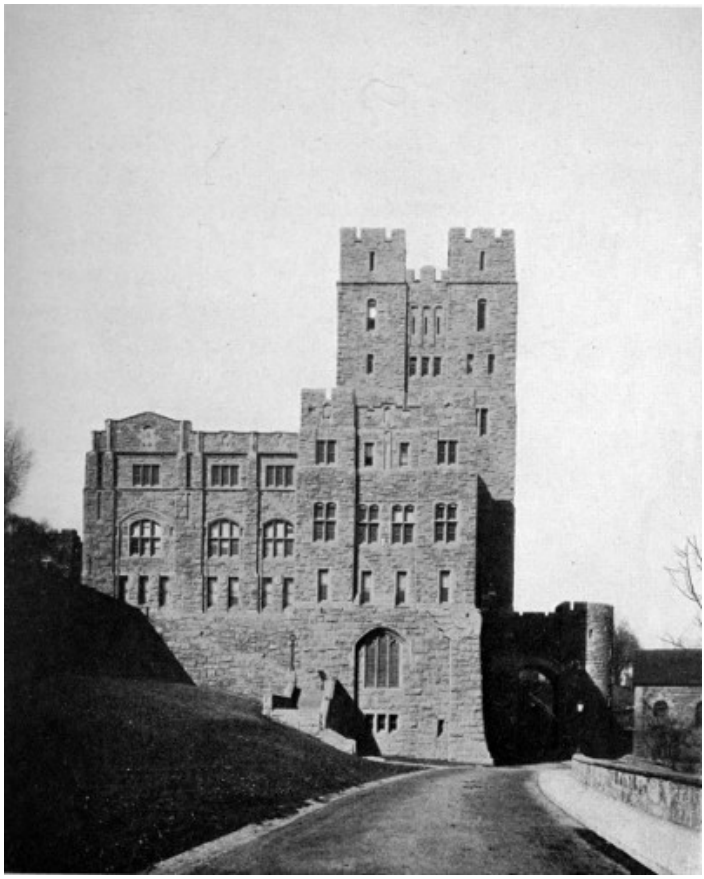
Class Formation in the Area of Barracks

West Point seen for the first time from the river, whether in sunshine or through the mists, is a sight not soon forgotten. The monumental Riding Hall that rises out of the cliff of which it seems to form a part, first fixes the eye, but as one's glance wanders a little higher it drinks in the towering pile of Post Headquarters; higher yet, the eye rests for a moment on the crenelated border of the roof of the Academic

Building, and then, higher still, it pauses to contemplate the beauty of West Point's crowning architectural achievement, the Cadet Chapel. For a moment the beholder seems withdrawn from the sordid material world, and filled with a multitude of noble impressions. He experiences a spiritual uplift as he admires the majestic simplicity and grandeur of the buildings, an architectural triumph worthy to have inspired Ruskin's beautiful thought, "frozen music."

When the Government determined to rebuild West Point, nearly fifteen years ago, the presence of two fine buildings of Gothic design—the Library and the Cadet Barracks—decided the style of architecture. These two buildings ranked as perhaps the most successful examples of the Collegiate Gothic that was much in vogue for educational institutions in the country half a century ago. A limited competition was held for designs and all architects who had distinguished themselves in Gothic work were invited to participate. Several beautiful designs for a Renaissance treatment were offered, but one group of architects, Cram, Goodhue, and Ferguson, submitted drawings for so admirable a Gothic treatment that they received the unanimous approval of a board of judges composed of eminent architects. The construction of the new buildings lasted over a period of about seven years, during which time the work was under the direction of Colonel John M. Carson, Jr., Quartermaster, who was representing the Government. In writing a book on West Point, any mention of the buildings involves the name of Colonel Carson who performed his difficult work with an unusual amount of zeal and intelligence. The result is that the new buildings are splendidly

constructed, and because the architects had an eye for harmony these structures seem to grow out of the rocks upon which they stand, emphasizing rather than detracting from West Point's natural beauty.



The Administration Building

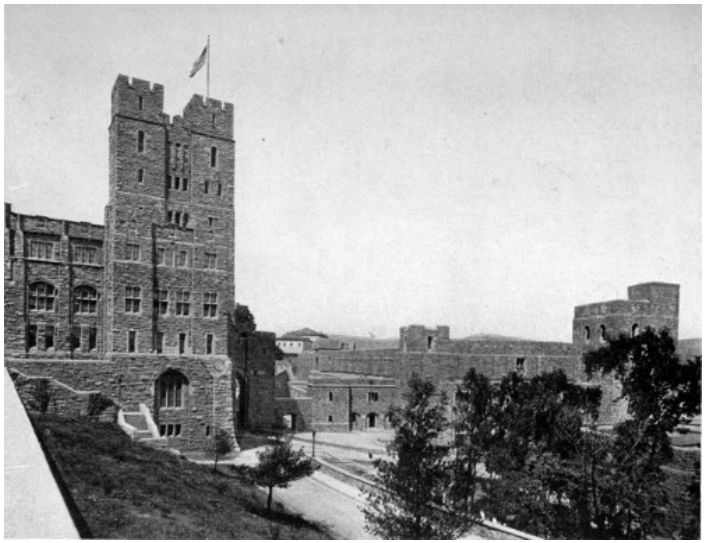
The north road from the station passes first, on the river side, the Power House built of granite from

local quarries. It is designed to supply the entire institution with electricity for light and power, and the central buildings with heat from exhaust steam. In a building of this nature, a factory-like look would be taken for granted and pardoned, but, on the contrary, its design is not only adapted for its function, but the building forms an important link in the architectural whole. It assumes its place quite naturally and modestly, almost unobtrusively in the natural landscape, tying the buildings in the upper terrace with the base. The tall smoke-stack is cleverly concealed within the walls of an imposing granite tower.

On a slightly higher level, and paralleling the river, is the Riding Hall splendidly impressive with its broad flat buttresses. The latter seem almost akin to the classic order, and serve in a very large measure to reconcile the classicism of the neighboring Cullum Memorial Hall,—an exotic among its surroundings—with the dominant Gothic of the place. The present Riding Hall occupies the site of not only the old hall, but also of the old Cavalry stables, and barracks. The old hall was built in 1855 and, for the number of cadets at West Point during the ensuing fifty years, it was sufficiently large. With the increase of the Corps of Cadets, and the quickened interest throughout the Service in equitation, however, more spacious accommodations for instruction were required. Usually when a building has served a useful and honorable purpose for many years, its demolition is generally viewed with regret. There was, however, no sentimental attachment for the Riding Hall. Many a painful hour had cadets spent within its walls learning to ride on the bare back of a raw-boned horse, or floundering around in the spongy tanbark.

In the little plaza at the junction of the Power House and Riding Hall, the road winds and passes under the mediæval arch of the Post Headquarters, or Administration Building. At this point, the bulk and dignity of the buildings are stupendous, and admiringly we stand, imprisoned, it would seem, in a quadrangle of Middle Age fortresses, whose sternness and solemnity seem symbolic of discipline and strength. The main entrance to the Riding Hall branches from the road a few paces beyond the arch, the lower level of the galleries being reached by a flight of steps that cling to the steep retaining wall of the road. The great arena is 150 by 600 feet and is covered by a cantilever roof, so that when the eye first encounters this interior, a sensation of its vastness holds the spectator in its grip. The roof is mostly of glass so as to afford a maximum of light, and the floor is covered with tanbark to make more endurable any sudden and unexpected descent from the back of a capricious beast. The building is steam-heated and electric lighted, for during the winter months, equitation drills extend into the late afternoon. The hall can be divided by curtains into three smaller halls, a scheme that permits three classes to undergo instruction at the same time. In one portion of the hall are stalls for one hundred mounts, but the majority of the horses are kept at the cavalry barracks. The hall is so large that during the winter months the U. S. M. A. Battery of Artillery uses it for a drill ground, thereby keeping the horses in good condition and the men well instructed. Moreover, the officers and cadets are enabled to keep up their practice in polo. Every Wednesday and Saturday afternoon, teams of cadets play each other, or try their skill against civilian opponents. Along the full length of the west wall, and the north and south

end, are balconies for the accommodation of visitors who are welcome whenever the hall is open.



Administration Building

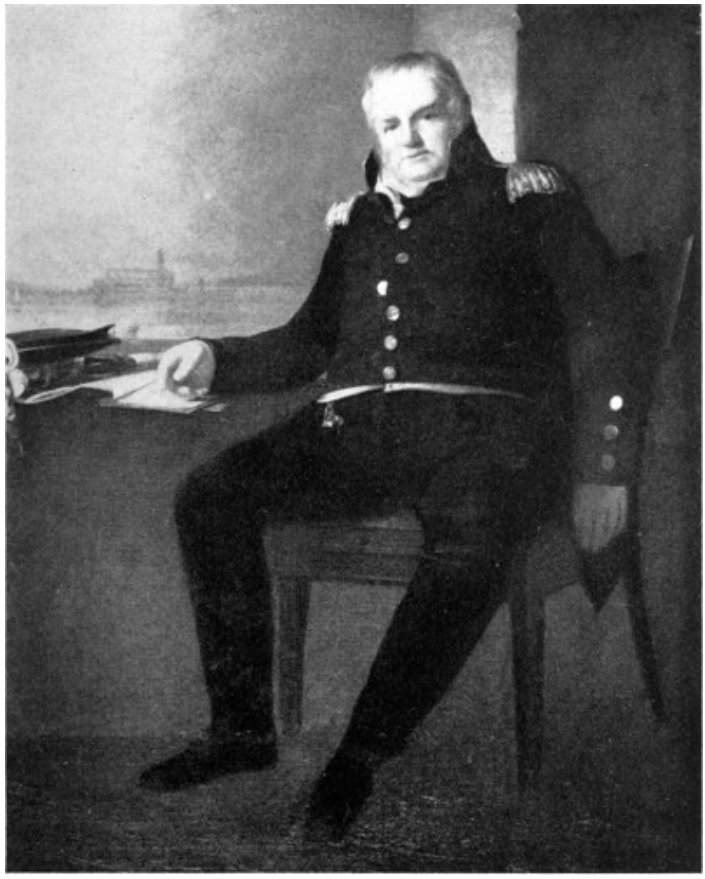
Riding Hall

Passing once more under the arch, we admire again for a moment the graceful Herculean proportions of the Administration Building whose imposing square tower, tipped with four smaller towers at the corners, rises precipitately one hundred and sixty feet. It is an interesting fact in these days of steel construction that this tower is built of solid masonry. At the southeast angle of the building, on a level with the base of the main floor, is an enormous eagle carved

in granite, its head high, its wings outstretched and flattened back proudly against the two sides of the edifice, as if proclaiming to the world its mission of protection over the Academy whose administrative heart is enclosed in this structure. As we ascend the stairway, alongside the basement at the left, we pass a large Gothic window which affords light to a vaulted hall used for courts-martial. The interior of this hall is in keeping with the mediæval donjon appearance of the whole building, and of such a chill and forbidding aspect as to inspire in the accused a feeling of guilt, *nolens volens*. The flight of stairs mounts to the level of the Post proper where an eastern view of the building is disclosed. A large sally-port leads into the court around which the building is constructed.

The exterior walls are ornamented with shields representing the coats-of-arms of various states, territories, and foreign possessions prepared from the official seals, and expressed according to the laws of Heraldry. The only coat-of-arms of an individual is that of George Washington, at the top of the east elevation of the courtyard. The obverse and reverse of the great seal of the United States will be found above the east and west entrances, respectively, of the sally-port. Flanking the obverse of the great seal are the seal of the War Department and the device of the Corps of Engineers. In addition to the shields, the devices of the various staff departments, usually associated with a headquarters, have been placed in the sally-port. Two of them, the Adjutant-General's Department, and the Quartermaster's Department, are on shields on the north side of the sally-port, and the Subsistence Department, Signal Corps, Pay Department, Ordnance Department, Inspector-

General's Department, Judge-Advocate-General's Department, Medical Department, and Chaplain's Corps, are on corbels at the bases of the ribs of the arch.



Colonel Jonathan Williams, Corps of Engineers
First Superintendent of the Military Academy

From the Painting by Thomas Sully, Library U.S.M.A.

In the courtyard the names that are carved in the granite were selected for the following reasons:

WILLIAMS	Colonel Jonathan Williams, first Superintendent of the Military Academy.
SWIFT	Colonel Joseph G. Swift, first graduate of the Military Academy.
TOTTEN	General Joseph G. Totten, the tenth graduate and *ex-officio* the first inspector of the Military Academy while serving as Chief of Engineers from 1838-1864.
THAYER	Major Sylvanus Thayer, Father of the Military Academy.
DELAFIELD	Colonel Richard Delafield, Superintendent from 1856 to 1861, under whose administration much construction was completed.
JEFFERSON	Thomas Jefferson, third President of the United States, during whose administration, 1801 to 1809, the Military Academy was founded.
MONROE	James Monroe, fifth President of the United States, 1817 to 1825, under whose administration the Military Academy developed and was encouraged.

Upon the second floor is the Academic Board room, a Gothic hall illuminated with stained glass windows containing emblems of the various arts and sciences.

The most striking feature of the room is the massive stone mantel, modeled by Laurie and ornamented with statuettes of the world's greatest warriors.

The description of the statuettes and the reasons for selecting the subject are given in a letter to Dr. Holden, late librarian, dated November 23, 1906. An Advisory Board of officers recommended:

> That the character of the figures on the mantlepiece be of a general military type—historical or legendary—best suited to harmonize with the architectural treatment and selected by the architects themselves from the three lists in this letter of November 23, 1906.

The heads appearing at the top of the mantel—in the crenelations—have no relation to the statuettes underneath. The small shields immediately below the statuettes are, however, indicative of the subjects as follows:

JOSHUA. Sun and Moon—taken from the Biblical legend describing the distinctly miraculous standing still of the Sun on the occasion of a certain battle.

HECTOR OF TROY. Mycenæan Scroll—a sort of triangular fylfot, which stands for Mycenæan civilization. This device would apply equally to that of Troy of which Hector was the greatest figure.



Colonel Joseph G. Swift
First Graduate of the Military Academy

From the Painting by Thomas Sully, Library U.S.M.A.

DAVID. King of all Israel, warrior and psalmist—the harp—selected by the architects instead of a little sling, especially since the head of Goliath is under the foot of the figure above.

ALEXANDER THE GREAT. A conventionalized Gordian knot severed.

JULIUS CÆSAR. The standard carried by the famous Roman Legions.

CHARLEMAGNE. King of the Franks—The imperial iron crown.

KING ARTHUR OF ENGLAND. The Holy Grail, symbolizing the whole purpose of his career.

GODFREY DE BOUILLON. Heraldic cross of Jerusalem of which city he was king and which forms a part of his own coat-of-arms.

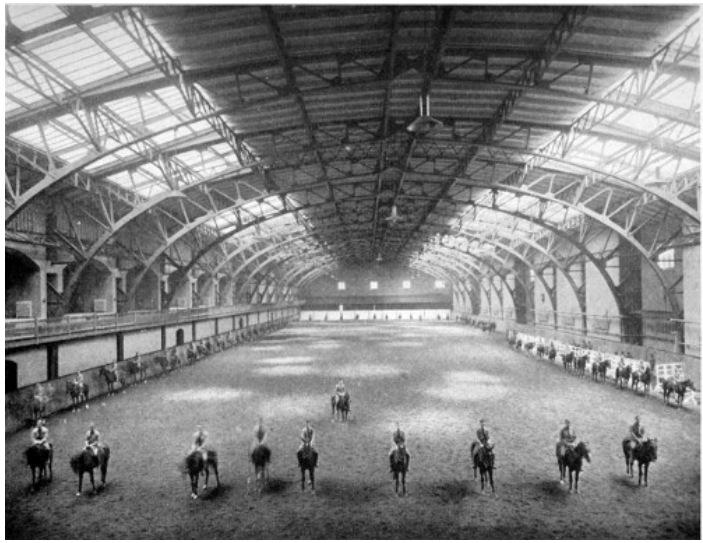
JUDAS MACCABEUS. The hammer—which is the actual meaning of the name "Maccabeus."

In the mantel, the figures are arranged chronologically and historically. Three of them, *i. e.*, Hector, Alexander, and Cæsar, were Heathen; three were Christians, viz.: Charlemagne, King Arthur, and Godfrey; and three were Jews, viz.: Joshua, David, and Judas.

The choice of subjects was suggested to the architects by Caxton's preface to the first volume of Sir Thomas Malory's *Morte d'Arthur*, from which the following quotation covering the choice of the figures is taken:

> For it is notorly known through the universal world, that there be nine worthy and the best that ever were, that is to wit, three Paynims, three

Jews, and three Christian men. As for the Paynims, they were to-fore the Incarnation of Christ, which were named, the first Hector of Troy, of whom the history is comen both in ballad and in prose, the second Alexander the Great, and the third Julius Cæsar, Emperor of Rome, of whom the histories be well known and had. And as for the three Jews, which were also to-fore the Incarnation of our Lord, of whom the first was Duke Joshua which brought the children of Israel into the land of behest, the second David, King of Jerusalem, and the third Judas Maccabeus, of these three the Bible rehearseth all their noble histories and acts. And since the said Incarnation have been three noble Christian men, stalled and admitted through the universal world into the number of the nine best and worthy. Of whom was first the noble Arthur. The second was Charlemain, or Charles the Great, of whom the history is had in many places, both in French and English. And the third and last was Godfrey of Boloine.



Cadets at Equitation in the World's Largest Riding Hall (600 ft. × 150 ft.)

Upon the same floor as the Academic Board room are the three offices of the Superintendent, the Adjutant, and the clerks. The Headquarters building houses, moreover, the offices of the Treasurer, the Quartermaster, the printing shops, the Post Office, and the Ordnance Museum, the entrance to which is at the left of the sally-port. Begun in 1854, the Museum has throughout the years gathered some valuable trophies of war, interesting relics, and models of the arms of all nations. Visitors are well repaid by a visit to this interesting spot. Historic relics abound in the rooms. I might mention among them a portion of the flagstaff that was at Fort Sumter in 1861; presentation swords belonging to distinguished American generals; General Grant's uniform and horse equipment; mementoes of the Philippine insurrection and of the war with Spain,

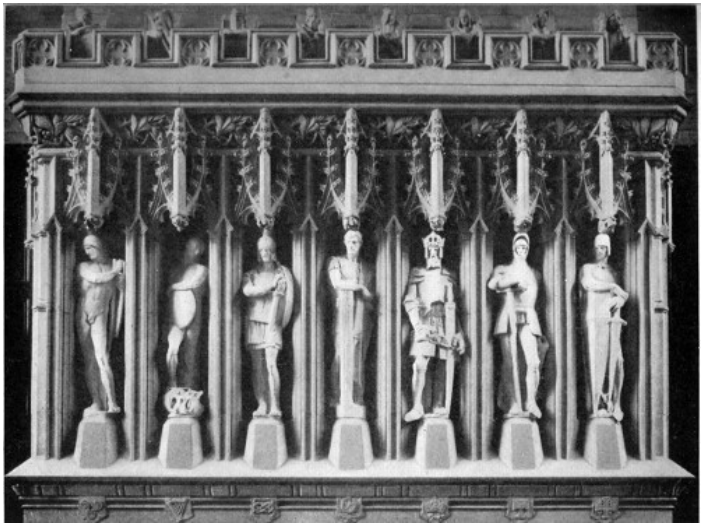
not to speak of a rare and beautiful collection of weapons of all kinds. Not the least interesting part of the exhibit are the trophies of the Revolution. In glass cases are preserved five flags captured by the American army during the Revolution, two of which were British royal colors, and three taken from the German mercenaries sent over by King George. The former were taken at Yorktown. All these flags were originally the property of General Washington by whom they were bequeathed to George Washington Parke Custis, the son of his adopted son, and grandson of Mrs. Washington. He in turn bequeathed them to the War Department, which came into possession of them in 1858. The same year Secretary Floyd presented them to the Academy.

Across the road from the Administration Building is the Cadet Mess. It is one of the oldest buildings, the main part dating from 1850. The architecture conforms in a general way to that of the new buildings. With its broad pavement in front, it sets well back from the road, possessing not only the dignity of its more imposing neighbors, but in addition a certain quaint charm.

The large central doors give access to the main hall whose walls are hung with portraits of distinguished graduates, chiefly the former Superintendents of the Academy. Perhaps the most interesting painting is that of General Robert E. Lee, who was Superintendent in 1852. Frequently I have heard visitors express surprise that General Lee's portrait should hang in the halls of the National Military Academy, notwithstanding he was a graduate and afterwards a Superintendent. The fact that he fought against the Union, they argue, should preclude the bestowal of the honor. West Point, however,

considers that since we are a united people once more, his record should be recognized by his Alma Mater from whom he learned the lessons that brought him his fame and his glory.

Symmetrically arranged in the hall are the mess tables. They are made to accommodate ten cadets, but occasionally, here and there, two tables are shoved together for economy of floor space. At these tables are twenty cadets. It is a pleasure to enter the Mess Hall prior to any meal. Every table is immaculate with its snowy clean cloth, its polished cutlery, and shining crockery. The cadets are not seated by classes but by companies, each company having a certain number of tables in the section of the hall assigned its battalion. As a rule, the ten messmates are made up of three first classmen, two second classmen, two third classmen, and three fourth classmen. The latter are given, by custom of the Corps, various duties to perform at mess such as carving the meat, procuring the coffee and milk.



The Carved Mantel in the Hall of the Academic Board

Sculptor—Laurie

The Nine Great Warriors of the World

Note: There are also two figures on the sides, not visible

Three long passageways lead from the main dining-hall to the kitchen. At first glance the super-cleanliness of the surroundings strikes the observer, but his attention is soon attracted to the numerous clever devices for cooking, and for saving time and labor. The preparation of the food for cooking occurs outside of the kitchen proper. Each department prepares its kind, whereupon it is carried to the chef to be cooked and served. The labor of preparation is greatly reduced by the liberal use of machinery. A clever electrical machine rapidly peels the potatoes, a whole bushel of them, in a few minutes; other contrivances make and cut the bread, sterilize the

milk, freeze the ice-cream; and wash and dry the innumerable dishes. Without the aid of these labor-saving devices it would be impossible to maintain such an excellent mess for the cadets. Even now the capacity of the plant is tested almost to its limit, and with the increase in the Corps to 1200 cadets, it will be necessary either to enlarge the present Cadet Mess or to build a new hall. The disappearance of the present Mess, Grant Hall, will be viewed with great regret by many graduates who dined for four long years within its really historic walls.

South of the Cadet Mess is the Hospital for cadets, a large granite building perched on a terrace, well back from the road. It consists of a central portion of three stories and basement, with two wings of two stories each and basement. The older portions date from 1875, but the wings are of more recent construction. The wings are practically detached from the main portion of the building for the possible isolation of cases. The equipment is, of course, modern in every respect. Each wing contains two wards, making four in all, named respectively Cuyler, McElderry, McParlin, and Wheaton in honor of former distinguished military surgeons on duty at West Point. I do not suppose that there is a building on the Post which arouses in cadets so many different kinds of feeling. To some it is a place to be avoided, but to a large number, especially to those who succeed in entering for minor ailments, it is viewed as a haven of rest. It is the one place where the cadets are free from the irksome routine, where there is no reveille, and where the convalescents revel in what appears to them epicurean feasts. Vatel, the famous French chef, never enjoyed more renown than does the cook at the hospital.

Almost every cadet has a secret longing to be in the hospital at least for a short period during his course, and those who "break in" for slight ailments are regarded with a special esteem by their fellows. One of the first adages that a plebe learns at West Point is "faint heart never broke into the hospital." The surgeons, however, are pretty clever men and they size up the situation very clearly in each case.



The North Cadet Barracks

I remember that upon one occasion when I was a cadet, a group of convalescents were, one winter day, holding a mutual congratulatory meeting in one of the wards, the burden of the conversation being their luck and also their skill in remaining so long in this abode of rest. Arthur C——, who was the most successful of the disciples of the "rest cure," was perched upon a bed explaining to an admiring line of

heads in little snow-white cots, the strategy necessary to remain in the ward, finishing his discourse oratorically; “Some may come and some may go but *I* stay on forever!” when the door opened and in walked the surgeon. Cadet C—— was next day returned to duty.

The officer in charge of the hospital is the Post Surgeon, who is assisted by three or four captains of the Medical Corps, and by several Dental Surgeons. These officers are also in charge of the Soldiers’ Hospital, a separate building for the enlisted men of the garrison, and are responsible for the general health of the command.

The chief buildings of the Academy occupy relatively a small area of ground. Just north of the Cadet Mess and flanking the main road are the two Academic buildings, known as the East and West Academic. The East building is new, having been completed in 1913, one of the last provided for in the rebuilding of West Point. The West Academic building, which was completed in 1895, is built of Massachusetts granite and cost about five hundred thousand dollars. In this building are located the Departments of Civil and Military Engineering, Mathematics, Law, Drawing, Ordnance and Gunnery, and English and History; in the East building the Departments of Modern Languages, Chemistry and Electricity, Natural and Experimental Philosophy. The latter building is provided with the most modern lecture rooms, electrical and chemical laboratories, besides a mineralogical and geological museum. The major portion of both buildings contain the section rooms for recitation purposes. Visitors are admitted if accompanied by an officer.

The architecture of both of these buildings is Gothic, but that of the new or East building is of a more exquisite beauty. Splendidly situated, it gives the impression of bulk and mass, much the same feeling that one has in regarding a dreadnought for the first time, but this impression soon gives way to an appreciation of a certain delicacy of treatment, a simple dignity that pleases. One of the best impressions of its beauty is obtained about dusk when the evening mists dim its outlines and its surface is bathed in shadows relieved only by the glimmering of the mediæval lanterns on either side of the main door.

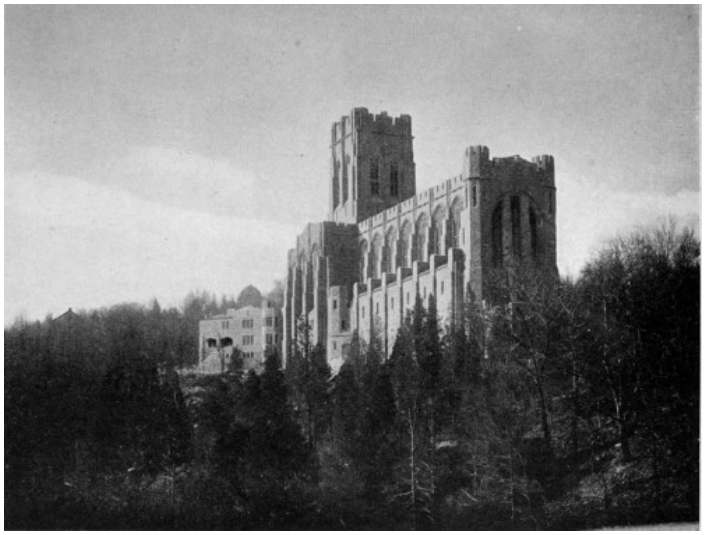
Immediately facing the center of the East Academic Building and across the road, is a large opening known as a sally-port through which the sections of cadets must march to recitations in the East Academic building. This passageway connects the main road with the area of barracks, a space of ground that derives its name from the brown-stone buildings that bound a portion of its perimeter. Along one side is a cement walk on which the cadets form to be marched to their recitations, and a sidewalk borders the barracks. With the exception of a small plot of grass near the Academic building the area is devoid of verdure, but is covered with a fine gravel that gives a clean and well-groomed appearance to the ground. The word “Area” has great connoting power. To a large number of cadets, it vividly brings to mind the punishment tours that they wearily trudged on Wednesday and Saturday afternoons across its surface. To the majority, however, it is the “hub” of cadet life, the assembly place for recitations, sometimes for meals; the scene of many an inspection or a guard mount, and most

important of all, it contains a small insignificant building with a clock tower where dwell the Commandant of Cadets and his assistants, the Tactical officers.

The building on the north and west of the area is the South Cadet Barracks, built in 1848. This edifice, of 360 feet frontage, is constructed of native granite, with crenelations and cornices of red sandstone, and the Elizabethan style of its architecture harmonizes perfectly with the Gothic of the new buildings. In fact, the old Cadet Barracks is one of West Point's handsomest buildings. There are two hundred rooms in the building, 14 × 22 feet, each planned to accommodate two cadets. It is completely supplied with modern plumbing, heating, and electric lights. The barracks are divided into divisions, each containing sixteen rooms. There is no lateral communication between the divisions, but a certain number of them are assigned to a company, according to its strength. At present the 1st Bn. Cos. A, B, C, and D are quartered here.

I have often stood in the Area of Barracks and looked through the north sally-port to enjoy the fine vista that it framed. A section of the Plain fills half the picture, a beautiful foreground, either when resignedly spread out to the heat of the Highland summer, or shivering under its fleecy blanket of snow, over which the winter winds angrily blow. In the upper half against the far-away background of the Highland hills is the slender flagstaff, sometimes swathed in the folds of our national emblem, sometimes resisting with all its strength the fluttering of its precious charge which seems to implore its release to join the flight of the breeze.

As we leave the north sally-port and turn toward the angle between the two sets of barracks, high on the hill the monumental Cadet Chapel, West Point's spiritual fortress, looms above with extraordinary effectiveness. It has a fine site on a commanding spur just above the old Cadet Barracks on the west, from which point it dominates the Post. It lies in the shadow of old Fort Putnam of Revolutionary fame, and, built of stone quarried from its own hill, it seems a part of its naturally beautiful surroundings.



The Chapel

This edifice is in reality a large church with a seating capacity of fourteen hundred persons. In plan it is a crucifix, surmounted by a large central tower whose parapet is 130 feet above the pavement of the interior and 420 feet above the level of the river. The

tower contains two stories: the bell-ringer's story and the belfry above. There are as yet no chimes, but on national holidays, Christmas morning, and Easter, the band mounts to the bell-ringer's story, and the airs appropriate for the day float out through the louver windows in a weird and mysterious manner, as if some invisible symphony was playing in the clouds.

Just above the stately clerestory windows, and around the cornice of the building, is a row of carved figures, little bosses, representing the quest of the Holy Grail. Over the door of the main entrance is a great two-handed sword, Excalibur.

One should pause for a moment on the terrace in front of the main entrance to enjoy the magnificent panorama. In the distance, flows the Hudson winding among the Highland hills, and skirting the great Plain along whose edge stand the Bachelor Building, Cullum Hall, and the Officers' Mess. Directly below, in the shelter of the chapel hill, are grouped all of the main buildings pertaining to the cadets, the most conspicuous of which are the barracks. Viewed from this height the arrangement of the buildings resembles a regular nest, *le nid des cadets*.

A winding road back of the barracks leads to the Chapel. The interior of the Chapel is 200 feet long, and across the transepts, 72 feet wide. The nave contains fourteen large Gothic windows, now filled with temporary glass but which will later be replaced with memorial windows.

The jewel of the interior is the great chancel window, with its noble inscription:

> Erected to the glory of the God of Battles and in faithful memory of the departed graduates of the United States Military Academy, West Point, by the living alumni.

The deep shades of purple and red give the window an extraordinary richness. The best lights from the glass are obtained in the early afternoon about four o'clock. It is of rare richness and beauty, and for subject, color, and arrangement it is thought to be unexcelled in our country. There are twenty-seven panels, each of which contains an almost life-size figure representing one of the chief militant figures in the Bible. Services are held in the Chapel every Sunday morning at a quarter before eleven and are attended by cadets, officers, enlisted men, their families, and a large number of visitors. In addition to the regular service in the Chapel, where the cadet choir of one hundred and five voices is a feature, a series of organ recitals, free to the public, is given each year.



The Interior of the Chapel

The organ is of unusually fine quality and is surprisingly effective for an instrument of three manuals, or keyboards. But it is still incomplete, being both undersized for this cathedral-like building and inadequate to the proper performance of the finest music. The addition of a fourth manual, with its pipes located in the gallery opposite the present organ, now eloquently vacant, is needed to bring the

musical part of the service and the recitals up to the highest efficiency.

Upon the completion of the improvements contemplated the organ will become one of the art glories of the country, and with the Chapel,—perfect in architecture, surroundings, and acoustics—would create an atmosphere of rare idealism. The acquisition of every new stop given is indicated by a bronze tablet placed upon the console, or key desk, of the organ. The significance of such tablets would make this organ and console unique, not only in establishing historic traditions but also in affording substantial encouragement to the volunteer organist and to the choir.

The opportunity here presented is most worthy for anyone desirous of establishing a memorial to a graduate of the Academy, for a graduate wishing to honor the memory of one of his immediate family, for a class gift, or for anyone interested in furthering an artistic influence over the lives of the future officers of the Army of our country.

To assist in the completion of the organ, a fund, known as the “Organ Fund” has been started, which is kept alive by recital offerings, private subscriptions, and proceeds from sale of “The Corps,” a popular West Point song.

In the transepts are galleries but they are not at present equipped with seats. Along the nave also are covered galleries, almost hidden from view by the suspended flags.

A request made to the sexton will enable the visitor to see the crypt, a vaulted room beneath the Chapel

that is designed to be the final resting place of West Point's illustrious military dead.

To care for the spiritual welfare of the cadets and other residents of the Post, there is a Chaplain who is appointed by the President. His term of office is for four years, but he is usually re-appointed.

The location of the Chapel makes it visible from many places on the Post. In walking around the grounds, every once in a while an extraordinarily effective view of the fine building strikes the beholder. Each glimpse seems more beautiful than the previous one, and a general impression remains that the Chapel holds a spiritual dominion over the institution. Every corner of the main part of West Point seems under its influence. This feeling is particularly strong as we stand on the sidewalk between the old and new Cadet Barracks and gaze at this monumental pile of ethereal beauty that seems to lose itself in the sky. I never view the Chapel from this point without thinking of one of Maxfield Parrish's imaginative paintings of the Arabian Nights.

In the southwest angle of the Plain, from where I like to view the Chapel, is a white granite statue of Major Sylvanus Thayer, class of 1808. The funds for this modest but beautiful monument, which was unveiled June 11, 1883, were contributed by loyal graduates of the Academy and by loving friends. General Thayer was Superintendent of the Academy from 1817 to 1833. He was the first to establish a real curriculum, and so valuable were his services that he has since been called "the Father of the Academy." The body of the distinguished officer was brought from South Braintree, Mass., and reinterred in the Post cemetery on November 8, 1877. The sculptor of

the monument was Carl Conrad.

On the west side of the Plain is the North Cadet Barracks, one of the new buildings completed in 1908. The Gothic style employed in the treatment of this building, while resembling somewhat that of the old barracks, has more dignity, beauty, and grace. Not enough difference exists between the two to cause any lack of harmony. Chief among the changes made in the new barracks are the windows which are triple instead of single. As far as the interior is concerned the arrangement is identical. Modern plumbing has been installed in the old barracks to conform to its new neighbor, so that the cadets of today are no longer obliged to run down to the area to draw their water from the hydrant. The very mention of this ancient and picturesque custom brings back many memories, chiefly centered around reveille on a bitterly cold morning. Immediately upon the dismissal of the ranks, hordes of cadets (it seemed to me), clustered around one poor little hydrant from which a thin stream of icy water trickled into the *papier maché* buckets. Now, upon each floor of barracks are faucets with hot and cold water! I wish that I were a cadet again!

No one would judge the building to be a military barracks. Rather, a study of its lines would suggest that it was the home of some religious order. It has an undeniable ecclesiastical character that impresses one immediately. I have always derived great pleasure in contemplating its beauty and my imagination at these times fancies it as the refuge, the shelter, the sanctuary of a body of men separated from the material affairs of the world. It seems made to house only the best and noblest in nature, to be the environment from which high ideals receive their

greatest inspiration. A group of happy smiling cadets coming out of their rooms at this moment tells me that my imagination has been dwelling upon reality and not wandering into fantastic fields. This building is indeed the home of a splendid Order, the inspiring order of young manhood, clean-minded and honorable, trained in a school where they are taught the most scrupulous regard for the truth, and where they are given a *mens sana in corpore sano*.

In the quadrangle the light brick facing gives, in all sorts of weather, a bright cheerful aspect, a sunny appearance, that contrasts in a most welcome manner with the gloom of the quadrangle of the old barracks.

Set well back from the Plain, and to the north of the new barracks, is the Gymnasium. It is not built of granite like its neighbor, the new barracks, but has received from the hands of the architect an artistic and interesting treatment of brick and limestone. The broad wall-like surface of the front is broken by six flat buttresses, whose terminals are richly decorated. Viewing the building from the southeast corner these buttresses appear like giant sentinels, fine specimens of the building's physical development. Far across the parade ground the Bachelor Officers' quarters, of similar design, serves with the Gymnasium to link in one harmonious whole the old and new buildings surrounding the Plain.

The second story is devoted to the gymnasium proper. It is lighted by large skylights, and equipped with every possible device for physical development. The remainder of the building houses a fine natatorium, 77 feet wide and 92 feet long, with a swimming-pool 40 feet wide and 80 feet long; a

fencing-room, a boxing-room, a wrestling-room, besides the necessary dressing-rooms for both cadets and officers. In the basement is a shooting gallery for indoor rifle and pistol practice.

North of the Gymnasium and fronting the Plain, are the quarters of the Superintendent of the Academy, an interesting old house that dates from 1820. Surrounding the house is a quaint old ironwork porch of later date, but old enough to be a curiosity today. A well-proportioned central hall gives access to charming suites of spacious rooms on both sides of the quarters, but the suite on the left is the more beautiful for it offers a fascinating vista of three large rooms terminating in a conservatory filled with exotic plants. Delightful hospitality has been dispensed in these rooms to some of the most noted people in the world. Royalty, distinguished foreigners, civilians, and soldiers, noted American men and women are constantly visiting West Point to inspect the school and are always entertained by the Superintendent. If the walls of these quarters could speak they would relate some interesting incidents of the official life of West Point. The beauty of the rooms is today enhanced by a number of fine family portraits, painted by Thomas Sully, and the property of the present Superintendent, Colonel John Biddle, Corps of Engineers.

At any official function the guests usually crowd the fascinating old porch to watch the evolutions of the cadets upon the Plain opposite, or sometimes they indulgently stand on the front stone steps to pose for the breathlessly impatient movie men and photographers. The quarters are surrounded by beautiful, well-kept lawns and tall graceful elm trees.

A traveler may go far before he will behold so majestic a view as that of the Hudson River from Trophy Point and Battle Monument. For pure beauty it is unsurpassed. In the distance lies the city of Newburg, against a dim background of the Shawangunk Mountains, and in the foreground the little village of Coldspring nestles close to the side of rugged Breakneck. On the opposite side Cro's Nest descends abruptly to the water. At this spot the Hudson seems to be surrounded on all sides by land so that the beholder might well imagine himself in Europe among the Italian Lakes.

Upon this spot are a number of trophies, among the most interesting of which is a portion of the old chain that, during the Revolutionary War, was stretched across the river from just above Gee's Point to Constitution Island to prevent the passage of the British ships.

On a wooden carriage is a large Armstrong gun, captured at Fort Fisher during the Civil War, and nearby are many other guns taken in the Mexican and Spanish Wars. The Swartzkopf torpedo inclosed in an iron railing was captured from the Spanish cruiser *Viscaya* in the war with Spain, and the twenty-pound stone ball was brought from Smyrna, Turkey.

The polished monolith of granite nearby upon whose tip stands winged "Fame," poised with trumpet and outstretched wreath, is Battle Monument. The names which may be read upon its rolls are the victims of the Regular Army of 1861, to whose memory their comrades in arms have created this beautiful memorial.

IN MEMORY
OF THE
OFFICERS AND MEN
OF THE
REGULAR ARMY OF THE UNITED STATES
WHO FELL IN BATTLE DURING THE
WAR OF THE REBELLION
THIS MONUMENT IS ERECTED BY THEIR
SURVIVING COMRADES

In the words of the late Colonel Larned, “this memorial was not built by a grateful country, but by voluntary offerings from the hard-won pay of comrades in the field within hearing of the roar of battle, and in sight of the dead whose memory it preserves.... It is but right to add that the designer, Stanford White, and the sculptor, Frederick MacMonnies, have given a generous and enthusiastic labor to the work, far beyond the money recompense received, and in the true spirit of the artist and patriotic citizen.”



View up the Hudson River from Trophy Point

Toward the east is an equestrian bronze statue of the Father of our Country, seated upon his charger and with hand raised toward the Academy buildings as if in benediction of the institution that he labored so hard to establish. In these days of materialism, it is interesting to note that this magnificent gift was recently made to the Academy by someone who refused to disclose his name. The base of the pedestal bears the simple inscription “Presented by a Patriotic Citizen.”

The hotel, just in the rear of the Washington Monument, was built in 1829, and with the exception of a wing that was added in 1850, it has remained practically unchanged. It is not difficult to imagine, therefore, that its appointments fail to satisfy the luxurious tastes of present-day Americans, so that many complaints are heard, and not a few jokes passed at its expense. One humorist remarked that Washington was raising his hand not in

benediction of the Academy, but in a warning to the guests to keep away from the hotel.

From the hotel, a steep little graveled path entices the visitor into a most enchanting walk that skirts the steep precipice along the river. For three-quarters of a mile, Flirtation Walk pursues its way with its windings and abrupt turnings, its ascents and descents, past the site of the old chain Battery, and farther on past old Lantern Battery on Gee's Point, past the Bachelor Officers' quarters, until at the base of Cullum Hall it ends in Kosciusko's Garden. The latter is a cool little sheltered plateau, said to have been a favorite of the Pole. When the trees are in bloom, to stroll along the Walk is to feel the delicacy of nature, to behold the quintessence of her refinement. The foliage seems like maiden-hair fern through which charming little vistas of the river and the opposite bank are framed. On summer days it is a favorite for the cadets and their girls, who wander along its graveled path whiling away the time, or who seek out the choice nooks and screen themselves from profane eyes with a gaily colored parasol.

Near the end of Flirtation Walk alongside of old Battery Knox, a Revolutionary relic, stands the Bachelor Officers' quarters. This building of brick and limestone, serves to tie the new buildings with the classic Cullum Memorial Hall and the Officers' Mess. Its color is darker than the pink granite of Cullum Hall, to approach more closely the dark brown of the Library and the gray of the Academic, while its flat buttresses harmonize with the straight lines of Memorial Hall.

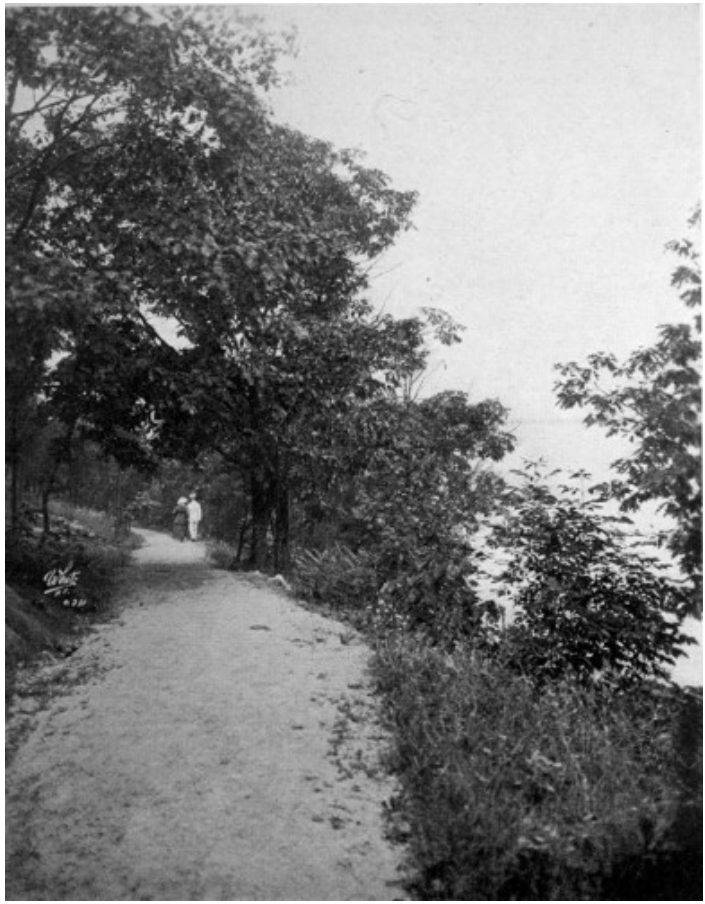


Photo White Studio

"Spooning" on Flirtation Walk

In this building there are forty suites of three rooms and a bath each, besides rooms in the basement for the janitor and for officers' servants.

Adjoining the Bachelor Officers' quarters is the beautiful Cullum Memorial Hall, built of Milford pink marble and resembling somewhat in style, the

Erechtheum, on the Acropolis at Athens. Just under the cornice and above the four Ionic columns is carved: “To the Officers and Graduates of the Military Academy.” To the left of the main hall is a small assembly room, whose walls contain bronze tablets to graduates who have been killed in action. The flags are guidons, carried by our Cavalry, both regular and volunteer, during our wars, chiefly during the Spanish War.

In the lower halls are tablets to Superintendents and to the deceased Professors of the Academy, besides fitting bronze memorial shields, recounting the battles of the Civil War in which graduates of the Academy participated.

Bronze trophy cannon are freely used in the adornment of the walls, both in the lower hall and in the hall on the second floor. They are chiefly Mexican and Confederate trophies, but a few were captured from the British at Stony Point (south of West Point) in July, 1779.

Among the most interesting perhaps of the cannon are the two large bronze ones in front of the main entrance. Both were made at Douay, France, in 1755, under the supervision of J. Béranger, royal commissioner of foundaries. The one on the right (as one enters the building) is inscribed “Le Fâcheux,” and the one on the left “Le Conquérant.” Both were taken from the Punta Blanca Battery in the harbor of Santiago de Cuba. These cannon are almost the exact duplicate of the five cannon at the United States Naval Academy, Annapolis, Md., and very similar to two cannon at the Virginia Military Institute, Lexington, Va. The latter guns, cast about eighty years before the others, are part of several cannon

purchased from France by Virginia in 1778 for use in the Revolutionary War. It is surprising that the Spanish should have been using them in Cuba, since the Spaniards manufactured guns of equally high quality.

The four inverted bronze mortars that surmount the corners of the piazza were made, two at Sevilla and two at Barcelona, in Spain, and were surrendered by the Mexicans to the American forces, April 22, 1847. These mortars were known as stone mortars, and they were employed in siege operations to precipitate large masses of stone upon the heads of the enemy in the advanced trenches, or in like manner to clear the trench of its defenders preparatory to an assault.

The second floor is called Thayer Hall, a large, beautifully proportioned room used for public functions, officers' and cadets' dances. At one end there is a small stage and a few scenic fixtures. In this hall are the portraits of graduates who have not only gained the rank of general officer, but have commanded *in time of war* units commensurate with their rank.

The building south of Memorial Hall is the Officers' Mess, where the bachelor officers obtain their meals. The building was constructed and partially furnished from Government funds, but it is kept up and managed by personal funds of officers on duty at West Point. In design it conforms closely to Cullum Hall, although plainer and more modest. It was so built as to be inconspicuous and not detract from the classic beauty of its stately neighbor.

The interior of the Mess is quite beautiful, especially

the main dining-hall and reading-room, whose principal features are mantels ornamented with small replicas of the figures of Day and Night, Morning and Evening, that adorn the tomb of the Medicis in Florence. Both Cullum Hall and the Mess were designed by the late Stanford White and completed, the former in 1899 and the latter in 1903. The Mess is an organized body incorporated under the laws of the State of New York as the West Point Army Mess. It was started in 1841 by General McClellan. There is no Mess in our Army that has had a continued existence for so long a term as this Mess, and I have heard it stated that few English or continental Messes are as old in the above sense.

The trip around the buildings brings us to the Library for which we all entertain a genuine affection. The quiet and repose of its fine rooms have an attraction for both officers and cadets that no other building offers, so that it is usually filled with lovers of books, especially on winter afternoons. Cadets, officers, enlisted men, women, and children frequent the various rooms whenever an opportunity presents itself. There is no greater pleasure, I believe, at West Point than to draw a big leather armchair over in one corner of the library and there forget the world in a good book.

Like so many of the buildings at West Point it was built of native granite, and in the Gothic style of architecture. The present building was erected in 1841 on the site of the old gun shed and cost approximately $50,000. It was, however, entirely remodeled in 1900-1901. The Library was originally designed by a board of Army officers and the style of architecture determined upon was used seven years later in the present South Cadet Barracks. The

dominant note that these two buildings gave to the character of the structures at West Point, determined the style of architecture in the comprehensive rebuilding of the Academy that began in 1904.

The library proper was founded in 1812, and with the years has grown until at the present time it contains 99,148 books. I am informed that the 100,000 mark will be celebrated by the purchase of a memorable volume. The Library may be said to be the oldest inhabitant of the neighborhood, for all its former associates, the old Riding Hall, the Cavalry Barracks, and the old Cadet Chapel are gone.

The latter building, however, has not permanently disappeared. Sentiment against its demolition was so strong that an appropriation was obtained to remove it to the cemetery to be used as a mortuary chapel. Consequently in 1911 it was taken down, each stone marked, and so carefully reconstructed that it is impossible to detect the slightest change in its appearance. The tablets, and the painting of “Peace and War” by the late Professor Weir have been preserved, but the British flags have been removed to the Ordnance Museum.

The cemetery is a beautiful, peaceful spot set aside for the repose of West Point’s dead. In the northeast angle is the cadet monument erected in 1818, to Cadet Vincent M. Lowe of New York, by his fellow-cadets. On New Year’s day, 1817, Cadet Lowe was killed by the premature discharge of a cannon while he was firing a salute. The pedestal is covered with the names of other cadets who died later on. Among the illustrious dead buried in the cemetery are Major Sylvanus Thayer, General Winfield Scott, Robert Anderson, and George A. Custer.

Along the main roads both north and south of the Plain are modest dwellings furnished for the officers on duty at West Point. The south end terminates in a broad plain used for the Cavalry and Field Artillery drill of the cadets.

In order that thorough instruction in both of these arms may be imparted to the cadets, detachments of Cavalry and Field Artillery are stationed at the Academy. Their barracks and stables form part of the new buildings, and are fine examples of what intelligence and taste can do for comfort and convenience. Along the west side of the drill field are the stables and, directly above, gracefully placed on the hillside, are the barracks provided with the best and most modern equipment. The presence of these two detachments of enlisted men, as well as that of the detachment of Engineers, is absolutely essential to the efficient instruction of the cadets.

An understanding of the uses of the buildings and some description of the prominent landmarks is necessary to a correct appreciation of the cadet's life and activities. The survey that I have given in this chapter will show that West Point is indeed fortunate in many ways. Few places have been so endowed by Nature with such wonderful beauty and picturesqueness, and, in addition, a generous Congress has adorned the place with magnificent buildings equipped with the finest that money can buy for the training of the future United States officers.

CHAPTER IV
THE POWERS THAT BE

In a spacious room in the southeast corner of the massive Post Headquarters building dwells officially the man who orders all of the comings and goings of the residents of West Point: cadets, officers, and enlisted men and their families. He is detailed by the President to the immediate government and military command of the Academy and Post of West Point for a period of four years, and given the official title of Superintendent of the Military Academy, which carries with it the rank, pay, and allowances of a colonel.

The duties of the office are varied and complex. The Superintendent is directly responsible for the actual state of the discipline, instruction, police administration, fiscal affairs, and other concerns of the Academy. The necessary work is organized and under the control of various officers, his assistants, who constitute his staff. The office of Superintendent is regarded as one of the most desirable and most honored that the Government has to offer to an officer of the Army, and justly so, for the position carries with it a great responsibility, fascinating work, large powers, and enormous prestige. The President is in no way limited in his selection for the office. He may appoint an officer of any rank whatsoever, from second lieutenant to general officer, but the policy always pursued has been to intrust the important duties of the position to an officer of character, ability, and experience. The selection of the Superintendents of the Military Academy was confined to the Corps of Engineers

from the establishment of the institution, March 16, 1802, till the passage of the law of July 13, 1866, which opened it to the entire Army. It is not an easy task to find just the man with all of the necessary requirements for this office. In addition to the officer's military ability, grasp of affairs, and experience, it is desirable that his scholarly attainments be of a distinctly high order, for, since he is *ex-officio* the President of the Academic Board, he will find occasion to use his scholarship for the permanent benefit of the curriculum.

In general, the military demands upon the average officer's time preclude the pursuit, on his part, of cultural and academic studies to any great degree, so that, while an officer may be of the highest moral character, have great experience, and on the whole make an admirable administrative chief, yet he might lack scholarship, which deficiency would lessen his value to the Academy as Superintendent.

Besides, the Superintendent should be a good judge of human nature, and in particular of young men. To be able to throw oneself back in memory to the age of twenty, re-grasp the fresh and immature viewpoint of youth, and then make the proper allowances for youth's inability to see life as a whole, is a gift not given to many men. Some of us could do it if we would exert our minds, but many are incapable. Where sympathy and understanding of young men are lacking on the part of the commanding officer there is too often a tendency to judge a cadet by the standard held by his superiors which they have gained only through years of experience. Moreover, a broad man in command dissipates with a word all of the trivialities of military life that seem big for the moment, and relieves his subordinates of the

haunting fear of an excess of participation in their affairs.

During the one hundred and fifteen years of its existence West Point has had but twenty-six Superintendents, each of whom has left a permanent influence for good at the Academy. The present incumbent, appointed in June, 1916, is Colonel John Biddle, Corps of Engineers, a graduate of West Point, Class of 1881.

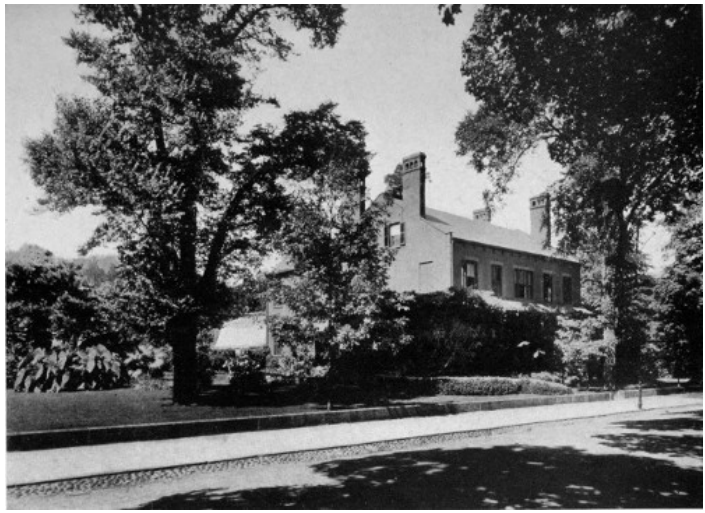
The military staff of the Superintendent consists of the Adjutant, the Quartermaster, the Treasurer, and the Surgeon, all officers of the Army detailed to perform the duties of their respective offices.

The Adjutant is the Superintendent's right-hand man. He is in fact his chief spokesman and representative in all official and social matters. He is, moreover, charged with all of the records and papers of the Academy except those relating to disbursements. Ordinarily, this officer is the personal choice of the Superintendent, for it is essential that perfect trust and harmony exist between these officers. It may be of interest to the layman to know that an Army Post is very much like a large family, or perhaps a patriarchal tribe would better describe the relations of the residents. The Superintendent is the head, and the Adjutant his executive officer.

In the olden days when troops were stationed on isolated frontier posts, the officers' families were entirely thrown upon one another for society. Although the necessity for these posts has long since disappeared, Congress has never authorized their abandonment, because their presence near some city or small town means a financial benefit to the towns

people. The influence of the Representative of that district is sufficient to retain it, and consequently, as of yore, officers' families must live together as one tribe.

This condition does not exist to the same extent at West Point as at other posts. The Adjutant is the peacemaker, diplomat, aide, buffer for the Superintendent in his administration of military and social duties. As may be imagined, he must be a man of great tact, good judgment, and possessed of Machiavelian diplomacy. He is always being called upon to make decisions, and since every decision affects somebody adversely, he has great need of a feeling for humanity. His official decision is tantamount to that of the Superintendent in whose name he is always supposed to act.



The Superintendent's Quarters
Built in 1820

All official letters to the Superintendent, or between officers, must pass over the Adjutant's desk, so that in a sense he is the central operator, making connections of the invisible ties for the time being, between the various departments and persons on the Post. He also acts as a shield to the Superintendent, saving him from the annoyance of the minor routine details.

In addition, he is regarded as the hub of the Post's social wheel. He initiates the public entertainments and authorizes the general social events of the officers and cadets. Naturally, he has nothing to do with functions of a private character, but for hops, dances, or other forms of distraction where one of

the public buildings is used, he gives the authorization of the Superintendent. He makes it his duty to mingle freely with the officers of the command; at the dances he sees that visitors are introduced; when *very* distinguished guests arrive at the Post, he puts on his full-dress uniform and goes to the station to meet them. If the guests are merely distinguished, he details some officer to act in his stead, and if they are plain sightseers with letters of introduction, a young subaltern gets the job. He is Adjutant of the Military Academy and of the Post of West Point. The duties of the former office pertain solely to cadets, their discipline and instruction, whereas the duties of the latter concern the officers, enlisted men, and other residents of the Post.

A sort of Damon and Pythias are the Adjutant and Quartermaster: a mention of one suggests the other. The Quartermaster is in charge of the public lands and buildings; of the material for the erection of buildings, and for the repairs and improvements, and for all other public property for which no other person is especially responsible. Under the direction of the Superintendent, he enters into contracts and makes purchases for the Academy and prepares all accounts, returns, and rolls relative to the public property under his charge. He is also in control of the workmen employed in the erection or repairs of the public buildings, or in the improvement of the grounds.

A Quartermaster is in reality a supply officer. Everything necessary for the up-keep of the Post and the command, come from his storehouses. Clothes, trucks, wagons, frying-pans, rakes, road-rollers, twine, furniture, garden hose are a few of the diverse articles that he must keep on hand. In his work at

West Point he is assisted by several officers, among whom he distributes the various duties pertaining to the care of the property, purchase of supplies, pay of officers and enlisted men. The supply of the cadets, however, is not under his jurisdiction.



Colonel John Biddle, Corps of Engineers
Superintendent

The Quartermaster's office is not entirely free from the official cumbersome machinery and red tape that clogs all Government branches. So efficiently does it check up upon all of its property, even to the most

minute screw, that it has inspired great respect for its routine into those who borrow from its storehouse. Some years ago, one of the officers' wives discovered the chimney of her house on fire. As she lived near the Hospital her first thought was to borrow one of the fire extinguishers. She rushed to the telephone:

"Hello! Hello! send over right away a fire extinguisher to Lieut. K's quarters!"

"I'm sorry, madam," replied the attendant, "I have no authority to let the fire extinguisher leave the Hospital."

"But my house is on fire!" shrieked the angered lady! "What shall I do?"

"You had better telephone the Quartermaster, madam, and get his permission, for the Hospital holds the fire extinguisher on memorandum receipt."

All matters that relate to the clothing, equipment, and subsistence of the cadets, including the purveying and supervision of the Cadet Mess, are under an officer of the Army detailed as Quartermaster and Commissary for the Corps of Cadets and Treasurer of the United States Military Academy.

The Government allows each cadet $600 per year and one ration per day, or commutation thereof, 40 cents per day, making a total of $746.00, but the cadet never receives in cash nor manages, his pay. The amount due him is turned over to the Treasurer, who keeps an account with each cadet in which he credits him with his monthly pay and charges him with the cost of his maintenance on a pro-rata basis

plus what he has spent for clothing and supplies. The Treasurer furnishes each cadet an itemized statement of his account at the close of each settlement period so that he knows just how much money he has saved, or owes. The pay provided is ample. Cadets who are economical and take good care of their clothes, who lose no government property for which they are responsible, are able to accumulate a nice balance that is paid to them upon graduation.

In order, however, to insure that all cadets shall leave the Academy without debts, and with their initial equipment paid for, the Treasurer deposits fourteen dollars per month from the pay of each cadet. This fund is known as the Equipment Fund and totals $704 during the four years. Before graduation each cadet is required to submit a certificate to the effect, if such be the case, that all articles of an officer's uniform ordered and received by him have been paid for; that, in case the complete outfit has not been received and paid for, he has in his possession $475 or that amount less whatever has been paid out for this purpose, which sum will be held and applied promptly to the payment of such articles of his uniform and equipment as have not yet been received and paid for; and that he has no unpaid debts contracted during the time he has been a cadet.

This provision is a very wise and beneficial one to the cadet, for he enters the Service free from the terrifying load of debt. Formerly the Equipment Fund was turned over to the graduating cadet, without any restrictions whatsoever. The consequence was that the largest part of it was spent in New York a few days after graduation, and the young officer was in debt for his uniform for many months thereafter. He

started his career with a millstone around his neck, to which weight a few added that of a wife. As one experienced officer remarked, “The ladies are all right, but do not marry until you are out of debt, else every time you take a drink in the Club, you will feel as if you are swallowing the baby’s socks.”

One of the most important and difficult duties of the Treasurer is catering to eight hundred ravenous young appetites. To be a successful Mess officer for this large number requires much study, especially in this age of the high cost of supplies. The food provided is excellent in quality and well prepared. In general it is plain and wholesome, just what one would expect at a Military School, but the menu is sufficiently varied so as to please even the fastidious. Southern palates are not forced to long for fried chicken nor Eastern palates for oysters. To make the New Englander feel quite at home periodic boiled dinners gladden their gastronomic lives. Then, too, ice-cream, since the installation of an electric freezer, has become as common as the proteids.

The monthly cost of the mess per cadet is about twenty dollars. The Treasurer charges against the cadet not only the cost of his board, but also his laundry, his uniforms, his clothing, his room equipment, mattress, pillows, sheets, towels, and all other necessary articles. Moreover, the salaries of the policemen who clean the halls of the barracks, the bootblacks, the cost of the cadet hops, athletics, and text-books, in fact, the cadet’s entire maintenance is charged against his pay. The Government, however, provides for the up-keep of the buildings, the heating, lighting, and repairs, from separate appropriations.

The fourth member of the military staff is the Surgeon, who with his four assistants, medical officers of the Army, watch over the health of the command. Under his charge is the hospital for cadets, and that for enlisted men.

The Surgeon has authority to excuse an officer or cadet from any duty whatsoever on account of illness. In the eyes of the cadets he stands as the guardian of the Gates of Paradise. When the body is fatigued, or one's head is choked up and eyes running from a bad cold, illnesses that in reality do not incapacitate one for duty, to have a nice sympathetic Dr. St. Peter jingle his keys and take you into the hospital for a brief rest is like the first whiff of a jasmine scented spring. The cadets soon learn to estimate the sympathetic qualities of a new Surgeon, and quickly pass around the word whether there has commenced the reign of an adamantine or tender Æsculapius.

The officers and cadets are required to undergo an annual physical examination, of which accurate records are kept. In case of illness, the nature is noted on special cards and filed with his record in Washington. The health, therefore, of officers, cadets, and enlisted men is constantly under the Surgeon's eyes, so that really serious illnesses are rare. In case of persistent or long illness, the officer or cadet may be granted a sick leave upon the Surgeon's recommendation.

The conduct of the business methods and military departments of the Military Academy, by the Superintendent and his staff, is annually inspected by the Inspector-General of the Army, who comes on from Washington for the purpose, or by officers

recommended by him acting under specific instructions from the War Department. In addition to the above inspection, a Board of Visitors annually visits the institution. Formerly, the President appointed to this Board distinguished citizens from all parts of the country, who arrived at West Point the first of June and remained until graduation, about ten days later. They were shown the workings of the school, and had explained to them the necessities for changes and improvements, whereupon they made to the President a written report containing comments and recommendations that seemed desirable. The Board performed its duties well, but Congress thought that all information, upon which appropriations are based, should be more direct. A law was passed therefore decreeing that:

> The Board of Visitors to the United States Military Academy shall consist of five members of the Committee on Military Affairs of the Senate, and seven members of the Committee on Military Affairs of the House of Representatives, to be appointed by the respective chairmen thereof, who shall annually visit the said Military Academy, together or separately as the said committee may elect, during the session of Congress; ... It shall be the duty of the Board of Visitors to inquire into the actual state of the discipline, instruction, police administration, fiscal affairs, and other concerns of the Academy.

With the passing of the visits in June of the former Board, some of the picturesqueness and flavor of the social life of June week has gone. At this season of the year the beautiful natural scenery of West Point formed a superb setting for the thrilling artillery drills, the cavalry charges, the infantry manœuvres, the bridge building, the concerts, the dances arranged in their honor. The cadets were at their best for they had just completed their spring training and there were no recruits in ranks to spoil the smoothness and precision of these manœuvres. It therefore seemed the best time for an Inspection Board to view and report upon the work.

Accompanying the Board of Visitors were always the wives and daughters of the members, who added to the social charm of the Board's visit. The cadets privately referred to the young ladies attached to the Board as "splinters." I remember, upon entrance, hearing one cadet ask another if he would "drag a splinter" for him. I later found out that this expression meant that he would be pleased if his comrade would escort one of the young ladies to a dance. The present Board usually pays its visit in mid-winter when the cadets are busiest with their studies, so that the equally charming Congressional "splinters" have little chance to win young hearts.

In the work of the institution the Superintendent is aided by a large number of subordinates. The number of officers and others in prominent positions on duty at the Academy is shown in the following list:

Superintendent and staff	5

Professors, permanent	7
Professors, by detail from Army	4
Professors, Associate, detailed	2
Professors, Assistant, detailed	12
Commandant of Cadets and Tactical officers	15
Master of the Sword, Instructor of Military Gymnastics and Physical Culture	1
Instructors and other officers	68
Medical Corps	4
Medical Corps, Instructors in Military Hygiene (August 28 to October 10)	4
Chaplain	1
Librarian	1
Civilian Instructors of Languages	3
Civilian Instructors of Fencing and Military Gymnastics	3
Teacher of Music	1
Organist and Choirmaster	1
Pay Clerk	1
Total	135

The majority of the officers are detailed from the Army-at-large for varying periods of time, but seven of the professors are permanent. The Superintendent, the heads of all Departments of Instruction, including the detailed heads, compose the Academic Board, which controls the program and methods of instruction. It is non-military in character, its duties pertaining almost solely to the various branches of learning. More especially, its duties are to examine

cadets, decide upon their merits and proficiency, grant diplomas, and recommend for commission in the Army. It reports, through the Superintendent, to the War Department, on the course of studies and methods of instruction. It also recommends the text-books to be used by the cadets in each department. Each member has one vote, including the Superintendent.

The work of the Board is largely done by committees, both General Committees and Class Committees. The latter are composed of the heads of those departments whose studies any one class are pursuing.

At the close of every examination the Academic Board reports to the War Department the names of all cadets who are deficient in studies or conduct and who are recommended by the Board for discharge or transfer to a lower class.

The seven professors permanently attached to the Academy are: the Professor of Civil and Military Engineering, Natural and Experimental Philosophy, Chemistry and Electricity, Modern Languages, Mathematics, Drawing, and English and History. These members are appointed by the President and usually selected from officers of the Army, graduates of the Academy, who have specialized along the lines of their department. The President usually appoints an officer recommended by the other members of the Board, but he is not restricted in his choice and may select whom he pleases for the position. All of the permanent Professors at present are graduates except the Professor of English and History who is a graduate of Yale. When the Department of English was created in 1910, it was felt that the head of it

should be a man who had specialized in English Literature.

Without reflecting on the graduates of the Academy, no one officer appeared upon the horizon with the requisite qualifications, a fact not to be wondered at, for few officers are ever in a position to pursue English courses that would equip them for this position. Upon the creation of the Department of English, History was transferred to this Department from the Department of Law with which it had long been associated.

In addition to the permanent members of the Board, the detailed ones are the Surgeon, who as the head of the Department of Hygiene, is entitled to a seat; the Professor of Practical Military Engineering, the Professor of Law, the Professor of Ordnance and Gunnery, and the Commandant of Cadets, all four of whom are detailed by the Secretary of War from the officers of the Army for a period of four years.

In the Department of Mathematics and Modern Languages the Professor has an associate professor and an assistant professor whose duty is to assist in the administrative work as well as the instruction. The other departments have only assistant professors, officers detailed from the Army who might be said to act as an Adjutant for the Professor. In common with the remaining officers, they perform administrative routine duties, relieving the Professor of the necessity of attending to minor questions. The Professor's time is very much occupied in the solution of problems that affect the Academy as a whole, in addition to the development of their respective courses, so that it is essential that his time be not employed with the unavoidable trivialities

that arise in the conduct of his Department.

The great mass of officers on duty at the Academy are, of course, the instructors. These men are all officers of the Army, graduates of the Academy, who are detailed for duty in the various departments. Formerly, the tour of duty was for four years, but since the passage of a law by Congress, the Detached Service Law, familiarly called the "Manchu Law," the time that an instructor can remain on duty at West Point, is dependent upon the amount of duty that he has had with troops during the preceding six years. No officer can remain on detached service, such as that at West Point, for more than four years.

It is apparent, therefore, that the corps of instructors is constantly changing, resulting in the introduction into the work of new blood and fresh viewpoints. This changing of instructors maintains a high standard of enthusiasm for teaching, so often lacking in institutions of learning where a subordinate teacher goes over, year in and year out, the same ground.

Moreover, the system of officer instructors is employed on account of the disciplinary value of their presence over the cadets. West Point is first and foremost a Military Academy, and it is of primary importance that the cadets shall absorb by example the spirit of discipline, and military deportment. Not the least of the advantages of having officers teach cadets is the contact that their presence maintains between West Point and the Army.

Officers are selected for duty at the Academy by the Heads of Departments who make every effort to secure men especially qualified for the work. For

example, the instructors in the Department of Engineering are all Engineer officers; in Ordnance and Gunnery, mostly Ordnance officers; in Chemistry and Electricity, usually Coast Artillery officers; in Mathematics, officers of the staff and line who excelled in this study as cadets; in English and History, line officers with recognized literary tendencies; in Languages, officers whose advantages have enabled them to acquire a good speaking knowledge of either French or Spanish. Until the outbreak of the European War, officers on duty in the Department of Languages were ordered to spend the summer in study in either France or Spain. They thereby were able to perfect their knowledge to an extent that rendered them most efficient instructors. Detailed to this Department are two native Spaniards and two Frenchmen, whose services are employed to carry along the instruction of the officer instructors as well as that of the cadets, so that every opportunity is offered to the cadet to progress as far as his ability will permit him in the time allotted these studies.

The time of the officer is well employed while on duty at the Academy. In those departments whose period of recitation is an hour and a half, he has two sections daily, but if the period is one hour, he instructs three sections. He averages, therefore, from fifteen to eighteen hours of actual teaching per week. To this amount must be added the conferences of the instructors, conducted either by the Professor or one of his assistants. These conferences are held, usually daily, and vary from one to two hours and cover the material in the lesson or in advance work. By means of these conferences, the Professor is able to standardize the teaching without restricting the

personality or individuality of his officers.

The routine work, that is, the keeping of records, weekly reports, the correcting of exercises, problems, and compositions, all demand a greater or less amount of time, and then what is most important, the instructor must spend many hours in preparation. I have known many instructors to work every night until midnight after the routine work of the day.

In the demand upon an officer's time, consideration is given the fact that with him teaching is an incident in his career, and he must therefore have at his disposal, whether he uses it or not, at least a couple of hours per day for professional work and study. When absent from troops an officer becomes more or less rusty upon the duties of his arm, and he should, consequently, by reading, the solution of problems, writing or what not, keep up with the progress made in his branch of the Service.

General Orders of the Army prescribe also that at least one hour per day must be employed in bodily exercise, riding, walking, tennis, golf, swimming, polo, etc., and the officer is required to submit a certificate stating that he has taken the prescribed amount.

I give in somewhat tedious detail the employment of the officer's time, because so frequently I hear, expressed by the layman, the opinion that officers of the Army have practically nothing to do. It is ordinarily difficult to disabuse their mind of this idea, chiefly because it is already made up. A visitor arrives at West Point to spend the day and seeing a few officers playing golf in the morning he assumes that *all* officers have nothing to do. He perhaps little

realizes that the same golfers, or tennis players, are trying to get their exercise at a time that will not interfere with their academic duties that begin for each department at varying hours. That same officer, who plays a game of golf at 9:30 A.M., will in all probability spend a part of the forenoon and afternoon with the cadets, and all evening in preparation. Appearances are often very deceptive. This is particularly true in the Army, which has been, until the war came upon us, subject to more unjust criticism than any other professional body.

In order to facilitate the instruction, the cadets are arranged in four distinct classes, corresponding with the four years of study. The cadets in the first year's course constitute the Fourth Class, those in the second year's course, the Third Class, those in the third year's course the Second Class, and those in the fourth year's course the First Class. The designation of senior, junior, sophomore, and freshman is not used at West Point as in colleges and universities, but the terms "Yearling" and "Plebe" are familiarly applied to cadets of the third and fourth classes respectively. The advancement of the cadets from one class to another is based upon proficiency in their studies, the details of which will be found in the chapter on "The Discipline of the Mind."

In order to distinguish the classes one from another, the device of putting bands of braid on the sleeve of the uniform has been adopted. These lengths of mohair are called service stripes and are issued one for each year of service, so that the "plebe" sleeve is bare, the "yearling" has a single stripe, the second classmen, two stripes, the first classmen, three stripes. This insignia is of black braid for all gray uniforms except the full dress coat, on which gold

braid is used. The chevrons, although primarily a designation of rank, also serve to distinguish some members of the classes. The cadet officers and the sergeants are members of the First Class and the corporals are of the Second Class. To many people, chevrons, or insignia or rank, means nothing. Girls especially have so little idea of their significance that they readily swallow anything a cadet tells them. It is the same today as of yore. I was at a hop not long ago when I overheard a young miss say to her cadet escort, who had just lost his chevrons, been "busted" as the cadets say:

"Why don't you wear some of those lovely gold stripes on your arm?"

"Well—er—you see," replied the 'buck,' "why that's a sort of private matter with me now."

O Tempora! O Mores! Tempora Mutantur, but not at West Point.

Until 1816, the cadets had no regular uniform, but were permitted to wear pretty much what they desired. Poor chaps, I scarcely blame them, because from the records it appears that for the large part of the time they were in rags. In winter especially, they hardly had enough clothes to keep them warm. In 1814, a uniform was prescribed, but little attention was paid to the prescribed dress, everything being worn according to fancy up to a major-general's uniform. General R. G. Ramsey (Cullum Register, Vol. III.) states that "during the winters of 1814 and 1815 cadets were greatly exposed to cold; great coats had not become the fashion for boys and such comfort was a specialty. My wardrobe had been carefully prepared, but the inventory did not include

the great coat." This is the first mention of the cadet overcoat.

In 1816, however, an order from the Adjutant-General changed the uniform of 1814, and with few modifications made from time to time, this uniform is worn today. The gray color is said to have been adopted out of compliment to General Scott and his troops who, clothed in gray (due to the inability of the government to furnish them with blue), had, on July 4, 1814, won a victory over the British at Chippewa.

Today the cadets have a few more uniforms, but the general appearance and the pattern have been only slightly changed since 1816. The present list includes a full-dress coat, a single-breasted coat of blue gray cloth, with three rows of gilt bell buttons in front, and button-holes of black silk cord in herring-bone form with a festoon turned at back end. The standing collar hooks in front and is ornamented with a blind hole of cord formed like that of the breast with a button on each side. The coat is cut off in front just below the waist line, but has in rear a skirt, ornamented with three buttons and cord holes. The full-dress coat is a garment of rare beauty and taste. I have never seen a more military uniform, one that expresses so well the purpose for which it is intended. It accentuates the good carriage of the cadets and at the same time clothes him with an air of elegance. It seems to me that anyone could look smart and well set-up in a cadet full-dress coat. When seen in full dress without his accoutrements, the cadet, with his slim waist, his well-developed shoulders, and chest proudly displaying those shiny buttons, and the little tail hanging down stiffly and conservatively, appears for all the world like proud

young cock-robin going a-courting Jenny Wren. The full-dress coat is worn for ceremonies, church, official receptions, hops, and for social calls, dining out, and entertainments.

For habitual wear, a dress coat, or a blouse (as it is more familiarly called) is prescribed. The garment was first worn, June 15, 1889. It is of the same style as the officers' blouse, being of gray cloth and bound around the edges, the cuffs, and up the seams in the back with black mohair braid, having a collar of the same material, of height suited to the wearer.

The trousers are of gray cloth with a black stripe up the side, one and one-half inch wide. In summer, white is worn, either full white, blouse, trousers, and cap, or a combination of the gray coat and the white trousers. This mixed uniform is the most effective, especially *en masse*, at a ceremony when the white belt and cross belts are worn.

For certain drills a gray flannel shirt is issued, and suitable breeches are provided for riding. The various combinations of the uniform are published in a table and designated by letter, so that the cadet consults the table for, we will say, "Full Dress A," where he finds in detail all articles of uniform to be worn for a ceremony.

The uniform is admirable in color, appearance, and utility. It is regrettable that the gray color is not used in the Regular Army instead of the lifeless ugly olive drab. It is equally as invisible, more attractive in appearance, no easier soiled, and easier to clean when soiled.

The only article of cadet uniform that seems out of

harmony with the rest, is the cadet cap. This headgear has no distinction and should be abolished. It replaced, some years ago, a forage cap patterned after those worn in the Civil War, but I do not think that the change was any improvement. The visor is too drooping, and the crown, too narrow and rigid, is clumsily fashioned. The majority of the cadets look as if they had put on by mistake, their small brother's hat, giving them a vaudeville appearance, in some cases as ludicrous as Weber and Fields.

The day's work of the Powers that Be, however, includes so many more important things than the appearance of a cadet cap that the style of the cap passes by unnoticed. The great aim of the Academy is to mold a man's character and train him to think. The Superintendent must constantly keep his finger on the Academy's pulse to see that these aims are being successfully carried out. To the cadets he is as far removed from their life as were the gods of Olympus from the common mortals. Not that the Superintendent wishes it so, but because of circumstances. The big problems of the Academy occupy so much of his time that he comes into comparatively little personal contact with the cadets. Like Henry IV., by being seldom seen, he is, when he appears, like a comet wondered at by them who tell each other:

"That is he, the 'Supt.'"

To be summoned before his presence makes a cadet anticipate the feeling when he will appear before the final bar of justice. He dons his full-dress uniform, pulls on a pair of white lisle thread gloves, puts a visiting card in his hat band to have it ready for Woods, the Superintendent's messenger, and sallies

forth, his heart a-tremble at the thought of appearing before Olympus.

He quickly reviews his past, wondering what he has done, for he thinks of course that he has unwittingly committed some offense. It is only when he finds himself standing before the Superintendent's desk saluting and saying:

"Sir, Cadet Ducrot reports as ordered," that he realizes that he is in the presence of a very human person like himself.

The wonderful prestige that the Superintendent has with the cadets is due, not so much to his rank, but to the fact that he too was once a cadet, and passed through experiences similar to their own. They appreciate the success that he has made in their chosen profession, and his example affords inspiration to many, for they argue that once upon a time, long ago, he too was a new cadet in "Beast Barracks."

CHAPTER V
"BEAST BARRACKS"

Blessed are the meek for they shall inherit the earth.

"You man, there, slouching across the Area! What's your name?"

The person addressed, a short fat chap, looks up over his big round tortoise-shell glasses, with unfeigned interest, but stands mute, apparently fascinated by the immaculate white trousers and the military bearing of the speaker.

“Do you hear me talking to you? What’s your name? Take your slimy eyes off me and look to the front!” sternly commands young Mars, coming a few steps nearer. The new arrival looks blank and tries to digest all of the orders at once.

“You other man in the green necktie, come here!” shouts this cadet officer as he catches sight of a tall lanky civilian in a Hart, Schaffner, Marx suit, long flat tan shoes, and a flaming green necktie, who has just sauntered through the sally-port.

“You man, there, do you hear me talking to you? Step out!”

The Green Necktie smilingly approaches the cadet officer, deposits his dress suitcase on the ground, and mops his brow.

“How do you do?” he cordially remarks, “my name is Jinks. ”

The cadet officer glares.

“Your name is *Mr.* Jinks, SIR,” he shouts. “*Mr.* Jinks, you get that!”

“And you too, Mr. Dumbguard,” turning to the chap with the Harvard spectacles, “don’t you forget to put a *Sir* on the end of your name. Who do you think you are around here? Stand up, both of you. Turn down the cuffs on your trousers, button up your coats, take

off all of those badges and scarfpins and stick them in your pocket. What do you think this place is? a school for dudes? Put your hats on straight!"

Command follows command with machine-gun rapidity. The green necktie is almost smothered from view as the candidate buttons his coat, and reluctantly the cuffs on the trousers are turned down.

"Pick up those suitcases and follow me."

"And so this is an introduction to West Point," ruminates the Harvard spectacles, "strikes me this chap is somewhat brusque. I wonder where all the other fellows are!"

Meanwhile over in front of the Administration Building is a large group of candidates just reporting. Some are laughing and joking, others remain silent, plunged in thought, wondering why they feel so strangely. About the same impression fills each one's mind. Underneath those parti-colored striped shirts each heart is thumping just a little faster than usual. The delay in reporting seems interminable. With thoughts of all sorts racing through their heads, they await their reception, or their "breaking in" with fearful interest.



Photo White Studio

"Beast Barracks"—Drawing Mattresses

Some few have been to West Point before, but the large majority have never been so fortunate. They know it only by *Cadet Days*, General King's entertaining book of cadet life, or by *The Spirit of Old West Point*, General Morris Schaff's charming reminiscent book of life in the Corps, about the time of the Civil War, or by romantic stories gathered here and there.

No words that I know of seem as magical as "West Point." To the candidate it conjures a vision of all that he hopes to be. The honor of being a cadet, the privilege of wearing the uniform, the immense possibilities of physical and mental achievement, the soul-satisfying fear of an ambition about to be realized, the glamour of military life, and, it must be admitted, a secret feeling of righteous superiority over his boy friends at home,—all these thoughts

crowd his imagination so that for once he sees frozen the vague ideal that he always has had of himself.

I am sure that Gawain's first impressions of King Arthur's court were dim in comparison with the dazzling visions of West Point that fill the candidate's mind. For months, in some cases for years, he has striven for an appointment. All of his interests and hopes have been centered upon becoming a cadet. He has read all the literature about the place, he has gone to sleep many a night living over in imagination his career. At last the day comes when he sets forth on the road of his great ambition. He can hardly believe that he is actually on the way to West Point! What enchanting pictures crowd his imagination and beguile the journey! In his mind's eye he is arriving; he sees himself in uniform, he wonders how he will like the life: one moment he is troubled by the probability of failure, the next, he spans the years in thought and is back home again on furlough, and he thrills with pride and pleasure at the prospect of greeting his old comrades after an absence of two years. How delightful it is to build castles in Spain! His imagination runs on and on; he promises himself to study hard, he wants his family to be proud of his record; he hopes to be a cadet officer. In his reverie he graduates and joins the Army, his ambition realized. All a-tingle with excitement he eagerly awaits the arrival at West Point.

When, however, the great gray buildings loom up as the day-line boat approaches the wharf, his buoyancy begins to ebb, his exhilaration cools under a mental Texas Norther, and the joy of anticipation so recently experienced receives a chill that causes him to gaze around uneasily and forlornly. He feels a

little sad and melancholy. Thoughts of home sweep over him.

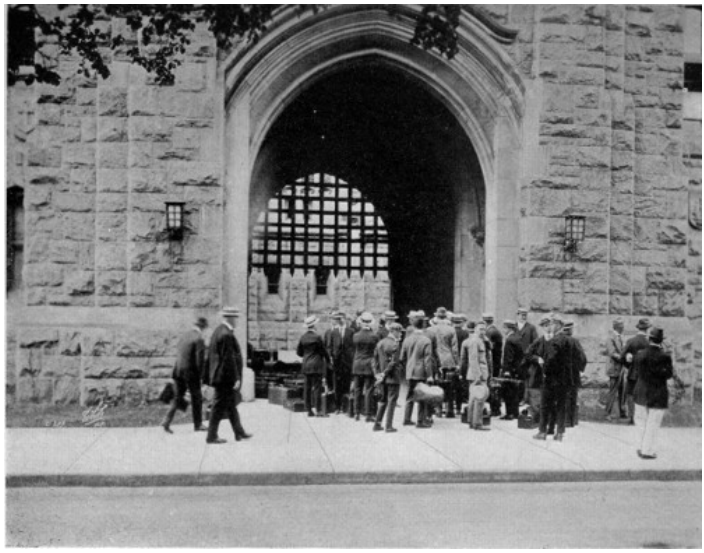


Photo White Studio

Reporting for Duty

There is, however, about certain fellow passengers, lean lank youths like himself, something responsive, something about their hats, something about the unnatural droop of the shoulders, the new suitcases, the same fearful look that draws him to their side. “Are you a candidate, too?” he asks hopefully. An answer is unnecessary. Instinct again has won, and the flood-gates of friendship are unreservedly opened to the newly made companion about to enter the Land of Egypt and the House of Bondage. We are timid creatures all of us, and even the strongest suffer a twinge of timidity, a queer feeling in the seat

of compassion, when about to penetrate the mystery surrounding an unknown life. At such a moment we all want to be little children, to have someone take us under shelter. We would like to run away from ugly, grim Reality that relentlessly blocks our way and with whom we must battle before we can go forward.

A sort of vague terror pervades the candidate as he climbs the hill from the station to the Adjutant's office where he must report, but he grasps his suitcase and sets forth for the Headquarters Building where his directions tell him to report upon his arrival. If he is ahead of time he goes to the hotel where he finds a great many candidates, some of whom have been at the Point several days trying to absorb some impressions before reporting. Here friends are quickly made. On the day that they are all ordered to report, when they feel that they are about to bid farewell to their civilian freedom, they reluctantly set out for Headquarters. Unwilling though they may be to report, few ever in after life regret having entered the Academy.

The Rubicon once passed, however, no time is lost in the administrative routine of receiving the raw material. After reporting to the Adjutant, the new cadet is turned over to an orderly who directs him to the office of the Treasurer. No general officer in full uniform, one month later, could create in the candidate's mind the same impression of the finished military product as does this first sight of a *simple soldat* at the Treasurer's. The new cadet is directed to deposit all the money that he has in his possession. Each new cadet is supposed to deposit one hundred and sixty dollars upon entrance to cover an initial cost of equipment, which amount is credited to the

cadet's account, together with any surplus change that he has at the time of admission. Although the Regulations require this initial deposit of one hundred and sixty dollars, the requirement is not absolutely obligatory, so that if any boy receives an appointment he should not be deterred from accepting on account of the financial stipulation. He should come at all events. The first equipment will be issued, and with economy he can later on wipe out the debt. If a boy's parents are poor, it would be foolish for them to make a great effort to raise this money. Let the boy come and assume the responsibility of the debt, and let the onus of it rest upon his more youthful shoulders which will very soon broaden to bear it. One by one the men pass the little wicket window of the Treasurer and deposit all their money. Pockets are emptied of all cash and checks, which are credited to the cadet's account. When eight, ten, or twelve candidates have been admitted, the young officer present forms them into a pseudo squad, or rather group, then calls an orderly of the Regular Army.

"Show these young gentlemen over to the Area of Barracks to the office of the Officer in Charge of New Cadets."

The orderly comes briskly to attention, his smart salute captivating the assorted collection of "Prides of Congressional Districts." They promptly follow his leadership, out of the postern gate of Headquarters, across the road to the Area of Barracks, reveling in the clouds of glory that, in their eyes, he trails behind him. They are now quite happy, fully launched upon their military careers.

The feeling of elation at being at last within the

sacred halls of the Academy begins to intoxicate the new cadet, when, upon the way over to the barracks, he notices a few stray passersby stop, look at the queer squad, and then smile slowly, almost insinuatingly, as if amused. It is an irritating smile. He sees the orderly smile too. Something has surely gone wrong. His heart goes down, down, down, and he soon feels as if someone had thrown about him a cloak of lead. But on the squad goes. He tries to shake off his heavy feeling, but it is no use. Many days elapse before the heavy mantle is cast aside. He is sure that something dreadful is about to happen. But stay, what is all this disturbance in the Area? Running back and forth between a sally-port and a barracks are a lot of bareheaded individuals, some in military shirt and cit trousers, others in lovely pink striped shirts and gray cadet trousers. They appear very uncomfortable. Several well set-up young cadets are at their heels giving them instructions in stern tones.

“Say, soldier, who are those men?” inquires one bold candidate.

“Those men are your new classmates,” explains the orderly.

Just then a lieutenant comes forward; the orderly turns over his charges and the men of the squad take their places in line with many other candidates who are awaiting their turn to report to the Officer in Charge. No sooner have they placed their grips on the ground, and begun to take life easy while waiting, than a flock of yearling corporals emerge from the Guardhouse.

“Stand up all along this line!” commands one.

“Hold up your heads, and drag in your chins,” shouts another, as he goes down the line giving each new cadet a little personal attention.

“Mr. Dumbguard, put that hat on straight.”

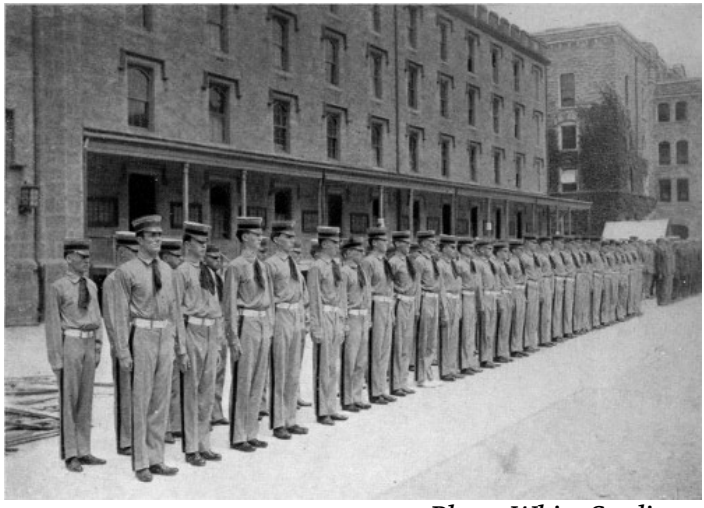


Photo White Studio

Two Hours after Reporting

All hats are at once adjusted. The whole line assumes an extraordinary appearance of rigidity. The heat becomes more intense. Large drops, globules of perspiration, roll off the crimson faces whose features have assumed a permanent set, depicting grief. Slowly the line advances. More cadet officers appear, giving each candidate the number of his room in barracks.

“Mr. Ducrot, your room is 1223, step out and find it,

put your baggage there and report back here immediately."

Mr. Ducrot, whose intellect has become somewhat clouded by all of the events and instructions that he has received in the last ten minutes, hurries off in the direction of the twelfth division.

The instruction of new cadets is under an officer of the Tactical Department. In his work he has both officer and cadet assistants.

In order that the cadets themselves might have experience in breaking in new men, cadets of the First (or senior) class are detailed as assistant instructors. They drill the new cadets in the school of the soldier and of the squad. They give him individual instruction in the care of his room, his correspondence, and in the use and care of his equipment and his personal hygiene. It is highly desirable that the new cadet should feel the influence of the older cadet. I shall never forget my first impressions of my cadet instructors. I thought that I had never seen such immaculate human beings in my life. With their straight backs, their lean faces, piercing eyes that stared coldly almost contemptuously at me, I was sure that they were all English generals imported direct from the Boer War. I didn't know that white duck trousers could be so white, nor brass buckles so shiny. I was then sure that I had an incapacity for military life, that I would never attain such a degree of excellence, and I inwardly withered before their glory.

Meanwhile, Mr. Ducrot and his fellow candidates, having found their rooms in barracks, are approaching the Guardhouse at a dead run upon the insistence of a cadet corporal. Once again they stand in front of their instructors who glare at them like Men of Wrath.

“Fall in,” commands the fiercest looking one.

A shuffling of feet, indefinite movements as if to do something, a few emphatic remarks by a corporal, and a semblance of a line is formed. Two Messrs. Ducrot ignore the suggestion of the Wrathful One, until a fresh-faced lieutenant almost pulls them into line.

The squad is now herded over to the Cadet Store to have issued the initial uniform, consisting of a gray shirt, campaign hat, cap, and gray flannel trousers.

In less than half an hour a complete metamorphosis takes place. The heterogeneous crowd of candidates that entered the store has lost the appearance of a bargain counter on sale day. By no means, however, have they gained a military aspect: all that can be said is that they are harmoniously clothed. It takes time to learn to wear a uniform properly, and nothing is funnier than a new cadet in his first outfit. These garments have been made up in stock sizes so that an issue can be made at once. The fit is fairly good, except the blouses. A plebe, however, soon appreciates a loose blouse. When the cadet instructors command:

“Mr. Dumbguard, get those shoulders back. More

yet! More yet!" a number of wrinkles appear in the back of the blouse. The looser therefore it is, the less effort is necessary to produce many wrinkles, and therefore, the task of appeasing the Man of Wrath easier.

The first day's work goes on rapidly. As soon as the new uniforms are donned, once again to the Cadet Store go the new cadets to draw their room equipment.

"New cadets, turn out promptly!" command the cadet instructors in the lower hall of each division. Down the iron steps hurriedly come running the novitiates, and line up in the Area. At the Cadet Store, each man is issued his mattress, pillows, and bedding. A long procession of young Atlases, sweating like horses, stagger through the sally-port, bearing aloft everything necessary for sleeping, except the bed. A few zealous ones add to the burden a bucket, perhaps a dipper rattling inside, and a broom that sways recklessly on the top of the mattress. Concealed somewhere in the mass is a bottle of indelible ink that is sure to drop before the room is reached. Standing in the Area are a few of the Wrathful tribe ever on the alert to see that no loitering occurs.

"Take up a double time, Mr. Ducrot, step out!"

Poor Mr. Ducrot, this time about five feet four inches tall, whose view has been obscured by the side of a mattress, attempts to be more of a hustler, stubs his toe, and down come pillows, mattress, bucket, and all.

"Well, Mr. Ducrot, you're a pretty mess, you're about

the grossest plebe I ever saw!" consoles one sarcastic Arch-Fiend.

"What do you think you're trying to celebrate out here, Mr. Dumbguard," cuts in another, "do you think you're going to take a nap?"

The senior cadet officer comes forward:

"What's the trouble?" he inquires.

Mr. Ducrot (after remembering to raise his hand in imitation of a salute) speaks up from the midst of his debâcle:

"I was ..."

"Sir! Sir!" commands the officer.

"Sir," recommences Mr. Ducrot, "I was coming through the sally-port when——"

Further details of this domestic tragedy are cut short by the roll of a drum.

"Pick up that stuff and get ready for dinner."

"Step out! Step out!" orders the cadet officer.

Dinner! Dinner! Beloved dinner! the thought fills Mr. Ducrot with ecstasy. Here it is twelve-thirty and he has been at it since 5:30. It seems three years.

At dinner formation, "Mr. Ducrot, Mr. Dumbguard and Co." learn how to "brace," a term used to denote the position of the shoulders well down and back, with the head erect and chin in, hands close to the side. The companies are marched, after a fashion, to

the Mess Hall. The cadet instructors accompany the new cadets continually commanding:

"Mr. Duflickit, drag in that chin!" "Hold your head up, No. 2, 1st squad!"

Once in the Mess Hall, the new cadet is allowed to eat all he wishes without interference. At the meal, however, he must comply with the instructions for the position of a cadet at table in the Mess Hall.

> This position shall be wholly without constraint. While eating the body shall be erect on the hips, inclining slightly forward, elbows off the table. When not eating he will sit at ease in his chair, erect or leaning back as he desires. His forearms may be kept in his lap, or his hand or hands may rest easily upon the table. At no time in the Mess Hall shall he tilt his chair back or elevate his feet, or turn his chair away from the table. Whenever a cadet is spoken to in the Mess Hall, he will look at the person speaking to him.

But who cares, this first meal, about the position at table? Nothing matters except to satisfy that ravenous appetite!

Dinner over, the tragedy of the afternoon is enacted. West Point pays no attention to the style of hair cutting preferred by the aspirant for military honors. All cadets must be shorn alike. The new cadets are consequently marched to the barber shop wherefrom

a long line of shaggy headed plebes protrudes like some serpent caught in a noose. What a sight is that barber shop! Hair everywhere: black hair, red hair, yellow hair, and some that resembles sun-burnt vanilla. Thick wavy locks, the despair of some distant damsel, drop dejectedly one by one. The hair must be kept short at all times so that it is impossible to distinguish at West Point cadets with histrionic leanings, or those poetically and musically inclined.

No rest yet in sight, this busiest of days. First the rooms must be arranged strictly according to the Regulations—a place for everything and everything in its place. Dozens of times are the belts piled, only to be pulled down and thrown on the floor by the Wrathful Tribe detailed to see that the task is correctly done. The bedding suffers the same ignominious treatment, for the slightest irregularity in arrangement is met with severe punishment. It seems hard and discouraging, but, later on, the reason for such strict compliance with orders appears. Only by constant repetition do new cadets learn to do a thing thoroughly.



The Interior of a Cadet's Room in Barracks

Tired out in body and brain, Mr. Ducrot sits on the edge of his bed for a moment's rest, when:

"New cadets turn out promptly!" echoes through the hall of the Division. Not a moment is lost in complying with this command.

He rushes down the stairs in a bewildered sort of way wondering what calamity is about to befall.

"Hurry up, Mr. Dumbguard, what do you mean by coming out here late?" greets his appearance upon the stoop of the barracks. From all the divisions new cadets are scampering to their places in ranks along the cement walk.

But who are the grave-looking officials in blue uniforms? The question is not long unanswered. The

new cadets are lined up along three sides of a square. The National colors and the Corps colors are brought to the center. The Notary Public, in the presence of the Superintendent and his staff, reads the oath of allegiance to the assembled new body, who with right hands raised toward Heaven, swear their fealty to the United States. The ceremony is simple, but to the plebe tremendously impressive. When he agrees to give four years' service to the Government after graduation, he feels as if he is signing away his life.

There is no cloud without its silver lining. To Mr. Ducrot's great joy, the chief Man of Wrath commands:

"New cadets will immediately take a bath."

For the first time since reporting he enjoys a little relaxation, splashing around under the showers, where occur stolen confidences when the instructors are busy elsewhere. A refreshed feeling creeps over Mr. Ducrot and he double times back to his room to await the inspection of his shoes and feet. Pretty soon, in pops the officer in charge with tapes and foot sticks for taking the measure of shoes. Alas, no pointed toes or English lasts are allowed:—all cadets must wear a sensible military shoe. Regularly, are Mr. Ducrot's feet inspected during his first few weeks to remedy ill-fitting shoes and prevent cases of soreness.

Years ago in the days of hazing, a vastly different sort of inspection of feet occurred. This was an unofficial inspection of the plebe's feet by upper-classmen. In the middle of the night when the tired plebe was snoring away, dreaming of being late to a formation and pursued by raging demons, he was

suddenly awakened by a hollow voice in his tent, commanding:

“Inspec-shun! Feet,” the “feet” said crisply and emphatically.

Without delay Mr. Ducrot sticks his bare feet out for the inspection of the midnight prowler. He then, by order, opens his toes into the intervals of which the gloating upper-classman poured melted candle grease, thereby ending the inspection.

At eight-thirty in the evening, Mr. Ducrot, wearily but joyfully, makes down his bed that has remained folded all day long. At last, he is to have a rest, blessed sleep is in sight.

At nine o’clock the orderly in front of the Guardhouse beats three taps on his drum and simultaneously the cry:

“Lights out!” echoes through the halls of the divisions. Immediately the barracks are plunged into darkness and silence. Only the tread of the cadet officer doing his half-hour patrol in the Area, disturbs the stillness of the night.

Mr. Ducrot sinks back upon his pillow, dead tired, almost too tired to sleep, and strives to bring a little order out of the chaos of his mind. The oft-repeated names Ducrot, Dumbjohn, Duflicket, Dumbguard float through his head, indescribably confused with mattresses, pillows, stern-looking cadet officers, vicious yearling corporals, rows of red-faced plebes, chins drawn way in, and the perspiration streaming down their faces. The events of the day are hopelessly jumbled in his mind. A feeling almost of

failure creeps over him, and in the solitude of the night a yearning for his home seizes him. All through his breast spasmodic sharp pains play hide and seek. The great loneliness to which men are prey, fills him with sadness and melancholy until a pleasing drowsiness drifts along and smothers Mr. Ducrot into unconsciousness.

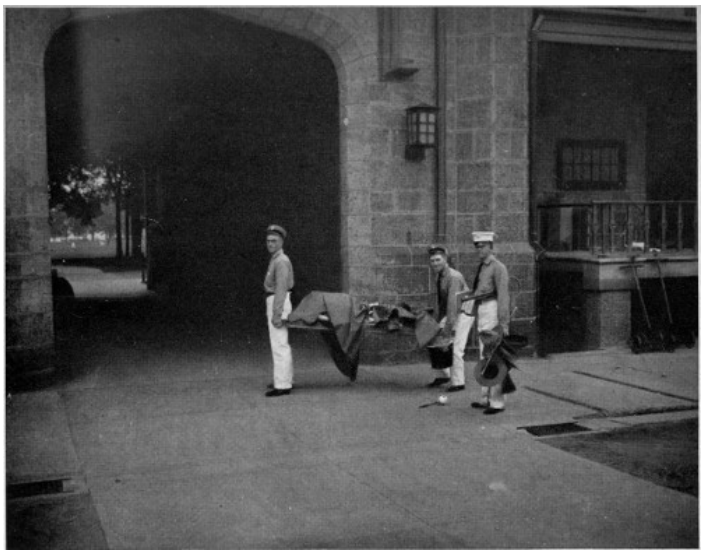
This period of training of the new cadet is familiarly called “Beast Barracks.” It lasts for about three weeks, at the end of which these new men are sent to camp to join the Battalions. It is necessary to segregate them for at least this length of time: otherwise they would be so wooden that they would be sticking their front rank files in the head with a bayonet.

It is not difficult to discern the origin of the name “Beast Barracks.” In the cadets’ mind, their breaking in is only comparable to the taming of some wild animals. The training is undeniably severe for a tenderfoot, but its “beastly” character is an imaginary creation. To the new man, however, it seems awfully real. I well remember my own feelings. When I was standing in the fierce sun, “bracing” in ranks along the cement walk of the Area, occasionally a white dog upon the hill opposite would come lazily snooping around the ash cans: I envied him his freedom. It seemed to me that I envied everyone except my classmates in misery. In my imagination I saw in flaming letters above every door I entered: “Abandon all hope ye who enter here.”

As I was re-christened Mr. Ducrot, I began to think I was someone else, I felt as if I must have died and that this was my second tour on earth, a punishment

for a wicked first life.

“There must be some way of getting out of this,” I reflected, but then, I thought that if the officers and cadets in charge of me had gone through with this training I could also. And I did,—Alleluiah!



Moving from Barracks to Camp

It was a long time, too, before I found out how all of us came to be addressed as Mr. Ducrot. During the academic year when I began to study French I made his acquaintance. He appeared in Keetel’s French Grammar, in the exercises of which the older cadets had uncovered a mysterious scandal concerning his private life. All plebes were at once required to relate to the upper-classmen the following bit of gossip, known as the famous Ducrot scandal. 1. Monsieur

Ducrot a un fils et *une fille*. 2. Madame Ducrot a un fils et *deux filles*. *Scandal.* The name became traditional in the Corps and was, with many others, applied indiscriminately to all plebes.

Early the next morning, Mr. Ducrot, whom we left sleeping, attends his first reveille. Although the drums do not begin to play until five-twenty, he steals out of bed long before and conscientiously sweeps, dusts, shaves, and dresses, for fear of not being on time for the formation. Boom! sounds the morning gun! Down the iron steps all the Mr. Ducrots noisily clatter, bolt out to the cement walk where they remain rigidly at attention for ten minutes until the cadet officers emerge half awake and disagreeable. Woe unto the sleepy-headed plebe who is late! As he peeks his head out of the Division door a couple of the Wrathful meet him and convoy him at top speed to his place in ranks. I was once late: I shall never forget the experience. When my "Boer War Generals" were chasing me I was seized with the same terror that a child has in dreaming of being pursued by a burly policeman and unable to run.

At 5:50 the cadet instructors make a cursory inspection of the rooms to see that they are in order before breakfast. Before entering they knock sharply on the door, an authoritative knock, but one flavored with a little bravado. Two immovable, gray-clad figures, with eyes glassily fixed on the wall in front of them, chins caressing their Adam's apple, shoulders way back, stand near the fireplace, looking for all the world like a couple of spoiled children about to cry, while the inspector rubs his white gloves over the tables and chairs.

Upon the second day commences the instruction of the new cadet in the elementary drills.

During the first few weeks the following schedule is carried out:

Infantry Instruction	7:15-7:45 a. m.
Physical Exercises	8:15-9:00 a. m.
Infantry Instruction	9:30-10:15 a. m.
	10:45-11:30 a. m.
	3:00-3:40 p. m.
	4:15-5:00 p. m.

Each day the course of instruction is definitely prescribed by the officer in charge. At the first drill the new cadets are taught the school of the soldier, the marchings, haltings, facings, and saluting. These exercises are given without rifles. Usually the second drill is given under arms. As the service rifle weighs nine pounds, it is desirable to accustom gradually these young lads to its weight. To one unaccustomed to carrying a rifle, it seems, after a short while, to bore into your shoulder. Any officer who has ever been a cadet will never require an enlisted man to carry his rifle too long, until fatigued. His own experience in “Beast Barracks” remains too vivid.

The instruction is progressive, so that the cadets are gradually assembled into squads, the squads into platoons, the platoons into companies. Naturally, some men improve faster than others. Those whose intellects seem befogged by the complexities of the drills are formed into what is known as the

"Awkward Squad" whence, as they progress, they are transferred. Last year one bright cadet instructor thought of a practical joke to inspire the new cadets to do their very best. It seems that the schedule of drills included a "sightseeing tour" around the Post, in order to familiarize the new cadets with their surroundings. The plebes were told that only the most efficient would go on this tour. Consequently great efforts were made by members of the awkward squad to increase their military efficiency. As the instructors knew and the plebes later discovered the "sightseeing trip" was anything but a treat. It was made on a broiling hot summer's afternoon at a rapid walk, and not after the fashion of the Metropolitan rubberneck wagons. Objects of interest were pointed out in the most military manner: 1. Eyes Right; 2. Hudson River; 3. Front, or, 1. Eyes Left; 2. Battle Monument; 3. Front!

Sandwiched between the infantry morning drill are the physical exercises. This name will make the plebes laugh, for all drills are physical exercises, but I intend it as a distinguishing name for a drill where the essence of exercise is dispensed. This drill is now given in the Gymnasium and consists of every known form of setting-up exercises that can be devised. For forty-five minutes the cadet executes them, both at halt and while marching. He is given frequent short rests of half a minute or a minute, after every different exercise, but nevertheless it seems to the naturally fatigued new cadet, as if every muscle, every sinew, and every bone was being relentlessly punished.

These setting-up exercises are a potent influence in the new cadets' physical development, and when the fresh young body has become accustomed to them,

they act as a tonic, an elixir. To a visitor the drill is always interesting as it is rather spectacular, due to the numbers acting in unison and with perfect cadence.

The early afternoon is devoted to the nomenclature and cleaning of the rifle. Scattered in groups in the shade of the old gymnasium or the Cadet Store, perspiring plebes take their rifles apart and, after cleaning them, try their utmost to put them together again.



Photo White Studio

A First Lesson in Saluting

Infantry drills fill the remainder of the afternoon until 5:00 P.M., when there comes a chance to wash away the grime before retreat. Immediately after the lowering of the flag each afternoon is an inspection

in ranks, for which all plebes must be carefully groomed. Each man must appear with immaculate linen and with his blouse and cap, and shoes carefully brushed. Mr. Ducrot dreads the inspection more than any other duty. Despite his care in dressing, the inspectors are sure to espy a tiny wisp from the clothes brush clinging to his cap or blouse, whereupon His Highness says:

“What do you mean by falling into ranks covered with straw?” Perhaps Mr. Ducrot is just seventeen years old with only a soupçon of hair on his face.

“Why, what’s this,” inquires a sharp-eyed inspector. “Mr. Ducrot, why didn’t you shave today? I see three hairs sticking out of your chin. Drag in your chin.”

Mr. Ducrot’s sense of humor overcomes him even in his miserable state of mind and the corners of his mouth begin to twitch.

“Wipe that smile off your face!” commands the cadet officer.

Up goes the hand: the offending emotion is erased.

“Now, Mr. Ducrot, throw it upon the ground and stamp upon it. Don’t you ever again smile in ranks.” Mr. Ducrot begins to feel that the Wrathful Ones are quite human after all and he feels cheered up for the remainder of the day. Up and down the line walk the cadet officers inspecting and “bracing” the plebes, commanding:

“Get your shoulders back! More yet! More yet!”

“Hold your head up; drag in your chin!”

"Suck up your stomach! Lean forward on your hips!" and so on.

For three weeks the new cadets are put through this severe course of instruction before they are deemed fit to be put in the ranks of the older cadets without ruining the appearance of the Battalions.

It is astonishing to behold the progress made in elementary training in this short period. It is true that the days are crammed full, and the instruction is of the most intensive kind, but even so the results far exceed what might be expected under the most rigorous of systems.

In the first place, the men lose all appearance of slovenliness and begin to acquire a distinct military bearing. The unevenness of gait is replaced by a measured tread, the hanging of heads and drooping of shoulders gives way to an erect smart carriage, and the excessive swinging of arms disappears. The group of very crude-looking individuals of the first few days has been changed into a harmonious appearing military body. Little by little the new men have begun to adjust themselves to their uniforms.

No less marked is the change of the mental attitude of the new cadet at the end of "Beast Barracks." All sense of his own importance, if he ever had any, has oozed away rapidly. Like Bob Acres, it sneaked out of the ends of his fingers the first few days, and he realizes what a very small fish he is in this new pond. He rapidly acquires a most receptive mood in which he absorbs the most important lesson that a soldier must learn,—OBEDIENCE. The officers and cadets in charge of him demand unhesitating and instant compliance with their orders. To this end the new

cadets are made to execute every order at a run, not to harass them as they sometimes think, but to form the habit of immediate obedience. This trait is the foundation of discipline, toward the inculcation of which in the new cadet, an excellent beginning is made in “Beast Barracks.”

At the end of three weeks the “Beasts” are moved from Barracks to join the rest of the Corps in camp. You ought to see them move. Carrying their Lares and Penates in striped laundry bags, or on canvas stretchers, they come and go all morning across the Plain in parallel rows, resembling for all the world a colony of ants building its new home. Upon arrival in camp, they join the companies to which they have been assigned, and from the state of “Beast” they are raised to the dignity of a plebe, the next lowest grade in the cadet hierarchy.

“Beast Barracks” is over, but its memory remains fresher than any other at West Point. In spite of the new and more interesting training of camp life, Mr. Ducrot is forever haunted by recollections of perspiration and indelible ink.

CHAPTER VI
BENDING THE TWIG

Only when the three hundred odd new cadets have been transferred to camp and joined the Battalion, do

they begin to feel that they are members of the Corps. They are, however, ill-formed, crude, ungainly members, and from the moment they pass the hedge that screens the camp from the visitors' seats, the Tactical gardeners begin the work of bending these natural twigs, so recently transplanted from the individualistic soil of civilian life to the orthodox ground of military training.

Realizing how difficult it is for a young man to adapt himself to the changed conditions that he meets at West Point, the authorities require the new cadet to report in June, just as the academic year has closed, in order that he may receive the benefit of the summer-camp training before taking up his studies. The physical fatigue that the new plebe experiences is really so great, that he would not be able to plunge into the academic course before his body has become accustomed to the demands made upon it. The aching muscles, the drooping eyes, that awful heaviness of fatigue must all be given time to pass away so that the mind may be free to pursue its development. To this end, he goes into camp after his first few weeks in "Beast Barracks."

The camp is prettily situated in the northeast corner of the Plain along the bluff overlooking the Hudson. In form it is rectangular, laid out for six companies whose streets are centrally cut by an avenue known as the general parade. The streets are parallel to the parade ground proper, from which they are separated and screened by a hedge.

Nor is the cadet camp lacking in the features that make every permanent camp comfortable and convenient for the soldier. For these creature comforts, the cadets have been at times criticised on

the ground that soldiers in the field should be content with the bare necessities of life. The cadet camp, however, is intended as a camp of instruction only. In military life there are two kinds of camps, the permanent camp and the temporary camp. In the latter, soldiers live close to nature dispensing with the hundred and one little conveniences that all of us today consider necessary to our physical well-being, but in the former, such as the cadet encampment, the soldier is provided with a maximum of comfort—and why not? The illustrated magazines that help to bring us closer to the Great War in Europe give visual proof that when men remain for any length of time in one place, even in the zone of danger, they build and adorn abodes. It may be that an enemy shell will destroy these shelters the next moment, but the domestic instinct remains unimpaired. Some of the bomb-proof dugouts on the western front are miniature triumphs of architecture and comfort. The occupation year after year of the cadet camp has had the same effect. We therefore see today a camp with graveled company streets that are illuminated at night by electricity. The tents, instead of being pegged, are supported by galvanized iron rails. The dim candle of olden times is replaced by the brilliant electric bulb, and the cadet, instead of reposing his weary bones on the hard wooden floor, slumbers luxuriously on a Gold Medal cot.

A large central tent, like a mother hen watching over her brood, is reserved for the Commandant of Cadets. The tents of the cadet officers are on the opposite edge of the space in front of the Tactical officers' tents, the next indication of hierarchical authority. Then come the tents of the non-commissioned officers and the privates.

To have a neat-looking camp, strict regulations govern the arrangement of the tents. Twice a day they are aligned. Due to changes in the temperature, the supporting cords lengthen or shorten, so that the front tent-pole gets out of alignment. Then an authoritative voice rings out:

"Turn out, 'B' company, and straighten your tent-poles!" Whereupon cadets in all conditions of dress and undress tumble out of the little brown canvas homes. When it rains the cords must be loosened at the first pitter-patter of the raindrops on the tent-fly. The new plebe sitting in his underwear in his tent, probably polishing his breastplate for the twenty-fifth time that day, does not realize that this duty must be performed until a dozen or more yearlings command from the recesses of the canvas bungalows:

"Turn out, you plebes, and loosen those tent-cords!" Out they jump into the "catacombs" (the space between the tents), bumping their heads against the rails, and at once commence tugging at the obstinate, water-soaked tent-cords, while the summer downpour soaks them to the skin.

To each tent two cadets are assigned, one of whom performs for a week at a time the duty of tent orderly. Whenever the cadet detailed for orderly is absent on account of duty or sickness, his tent-mate becomes responsible. In order that the Tactical officer in charge of any company may know which cadet is responsible, there is fastened on the front tent-pole, a revolving octagonal disk of wood, about three inches in diameter. Both cadets' names, as well

as the words “Guard” “Sick,” are printed on the face of the disk, along one of the sides, and the disk revolved to indicate the name of the orderly, or the cause of the occupant’s absence. The orderly is also supposed to keep the water bucket filled, but the occupants of each tent usually have some private treaty whose provisions prescribe which one shall “drag” the water from the hydrant.

Generally speaking the orderly is responsible for the cleanliness and police of the tent, and of the ground adjacent and in front, as far as the middle of the company street where the rubbish is swept into a pile to be removed by the policemen. These men are civilian employees, many of whom have been at the Academy so long that they are intimately identified with the Corps. In time, some of them will fade into legendary characters much the same as Benny Havens. Promptly at police call at five o’clock, the wheelbarrow squad commanded by “Mike,” “Frank,” or “Tony,” moves ceremoniously down the street collecting the sweepings. At this hour the camp presents an animated scene. Cadets are busily dragging the ground around their tents with a broom to give it a “spoony” appearance for inspection, and every few minutes some one man will dart out to the center of the street with a stray match or piece of paper and throw it in the passing wheelbarrow.

The interior of the tent contains a wooden clothes-press and usually a canvas stretcher suspended from the ridge pole. Each cadet has a certain section for his clothes. All articles, belts, gloves, socks must be folded and arranged in a prescribed manner. The cots are folded and kept out of sight during the day. Gray, painted wooden lockers for storing cleaning material and clothing border one side of the tent floor. Many

cadets, however, secrete food, known as “Boodle” in these convenient places, and I am sure that an unexpected inspection would reveal many tins of saltines, bottles of olives, and jars of peanut butter. During my cadet days, the officer in charge of my company never, for some reason, looked into the lockers. My tent-mate and I therefore grew more and more bold about filling them with vast supplies of “Boodle,” and we began to think that the “Tac” was inspired by a sort of *noblesse oblige* where the lockers were concerned, a sort of sympathetic remembrance of his own cadet-gnawing appetite. One Saturday, however, just as he was leaving and I was offering a silent prayer of thanksgiving, he ordered the lockers opened. A gallon jar in which some fifty olives lay submerged and a slovenly looking pineapple cheese met my humiliated gaze. A reprimand that as a cadet officer I should set an example to the rest of the company, and five demerits, were awarded to me forthwith.

When the tents are not prepared for inspection, however, cadets may make down the cots and rest. How wonderfully refreshing it is to rest! to throw oneself down on the blankets and forget the heat, the weary march, the grime, the dust, and abandon oneself to the delights of the imagination, dreaming of the sweetness of the past or building vast plans for the future! How precious to the cadet is each moment of repose snatched from the busy day! But it is in the morning that the real longing for sleep becomes most acute.

Every morning at 5:20, the solitary boom of the reveille gun is echoed throughout the hills, rudely dissipating the fog of unconsciousness that envelops the sleeping cadets. Little by little the deathlike

slumber of the camp is broken. Indistinct sounds, a sigh, a yawn, float gently out upon the air; drugged forms twist and roll uncertainly beneath the mosquito bars, as if struggling in a bewildered sort of way to preserve the pleasing heaviness that charms their bodies.

Suddenly the air is torn by the shrill garrulous fifes and the lusty rub-a-dub-dub of the drums. The reveille march has begun. Around the camp the "Hell Cats" march, up one street, down another like demons possessed. The shrieking sounds of the fifes and the deep rolling noise of the drums brusquely rout the stillness of the dawn, while the semi-conscious forms toy with danger, beguiling themselves that there is plenty of time until the assembly. Presently from near the general parade the familiar warning notes of *Yankee Doodle* change the camp to a place of intense animation. Up go mosquito bars and in a twinkling, almost as if by magic, tents disgorge their sleepy occupants, hastily and feverishly buttoning their uniforms as they run to their places in ranks to the fading rolls of the drum corps.

After reveille it takes but a few minutes to police the tents and perform the necessary ablutions before breakfast. The drills commence within a half-hour after the morning meal and continue until noon. They are of various kinds, the majority of which will be described in the chapter entitled "Lessons from Mars," but I will speak of the plebe's work in his first camp, since it is somewhat different.

The physical exercises given to the new cadet in "Beast Barracks" are continued in camp. In addition, he is sent to the Gymnasium for swimming, where a

professional instructor is present to see that no one drowns, and to teach the various strokes. As many of the cadets are adept swimmers upon entrance, they are tested, and those found qualified are excused from further attendance. The men who cannot swim, the real "land lubbers," attend daily until they are proficient.

The most diverting instruction, however, in plebe camp is the dancing lesson. A civilian professor spends the summer at West Point to instruct the fourth classmen in the Terpsichorean art. Every morning at hour intervals, squads of cadets carrying their pumps march across the parade to Cullum Hall. Here they remove their coats, put on their pumps, and line themselves along the wall. The waltz step is first taught as the basis of all dancing, then later the two-step, and, since the new dances have come upon us, the fox-trot and one-step are rehearsed toward the end of the course. The dancing lesson is not open to visitors. Once upon a time it was, but long cadets, short cadets, fat cadets, lean cadets, awkward and graceful ones, all tiptoeing, "one- and two- and threeing" around the room like a lot of coy young hippopotami with compass bearings lost, became a famous sight for tourists, who wanted to enjoy a good laugh. How could anyone learn to dance in the presence of a giggling crowd! But the crowd wasn't to blame! Here in one corner was a little slender chap delicate as a reed, perspiring in his efforts to steer his six-foot partner, a regular steam roller, through the mazes of Professor Vesay's old-fashioned waltz. Again, all over the room, self-conscious boys in white shirt-sleeves were in a bewildered state trying to execute the Professor's directions:

"Right foot in second position—glide and cut!"

Nowadays an officer excludes all sightseers during the lesson.

The instruction of the plebe in infantry drill continues uninterruptedly, for it is essential that he should not spoil the appearance of the rest of the battalion. Together with swimming, dancing, and infantry drill, his morning is completely occupied. After the midday dinner, he is assembled in squad for instruction in hygiene and guard duty, or he may be required to spend his time working upon his equipment, his brasses, his bayonet, and rifle.

Very little social diversion is permitted to the plebe, because he is usually awkward in appearance and unfamiliar with military customs and deportment. Consequently he considers that his life is excessively hard, to him unnecessarily so; but as I have observed cadets for thirteen years I am convinced of the wisdom of holding them in a distinct class for one year. Then they emerge from the cocoon of plebedom as dazzling yearling butterflies.

To afford instruction in guard duty the camp is surrounded by sentinels. A quota of cadets from each company marches on guard immediately after parade in the evening. There are three reliefs for each of the ten posts: three corporals, a sergeant, and two officers of the guard, and an officer of the day. The guard is under the control and supervision of the officer in charge, who is one of the Tactical officers. Each sentinel walks two hours and rests four, so that during the twenty-four hours the cadet walks eight hours. The effect of this duty upon the cadet is lasting, for it teaches him the fatigue a sentinel experiences and prevents him, when an officer, from demanding too much of his men. The borders of the

camp are divided into posts, numbered from 1 to 10.

The first important duty demanded of the plebe is guard. With what quivering sensations this youthful soldier approaches his first real test! Before he goes on guard he is instructed in his orders, both general and special, but few feel as if they knew them well enough to stand the ordeal of an inspection by a yearling corporal. No opportunity is lost, therefore, before the hour to march on post to perfect his knowledge, so that after supper little groups of excited and nervous plebes study diligently these orders under the pale and insect-infested lamp-posts near the guard tent. In the obscure light these slim gray forms, some seated and some standing, seem shadowy and motionless except for their gloves, little dabs of white that move restlessly to and fro, attacking the ubiquitous mosquitoes.

The nearby guard tents under the elms are dark except the main one where sit the officers of the guard, who keep the record of a stream of gay upper-classmen, signing out for the hops and concerts. How far off they are to the plebe! It seems to each one, as he watches them from the shadows, that there is an impassable gulf between them, and he wonders as he listens to their hurried voices calling, “Ducrot, hop with,” or “Dumbguard, hop with, extended” if ever his year of plebedom will roll by. What are those unintelligible remarks? It is some time before he understands that the above expressions mean that Cadet Ducrot is taking a young lady to the hop, and that Cadet Dumbguard also, except that the latter’s girl lives at some distance so that he is allowed ten minutes more after the conclusion of the dance to escort the young lady to her home. Today, as I stroll by the camp in the evening and see the same scenes

reënacted, I re-live the first impressions of my own plebe days.

Often while I was waiting my turn to go on post, I sat fascinated as I watched the scene at the guard tents in the twilight of the summer evenings. From the obscurity of the camp, stalwart figures were constantly coming. Their gray coats and the evening mists merged into one so completely, it seemed as if only animated pairs of white trousers were flitting across the parade, all converging toward Post No. 1. Little by little, as they approached the light of the guard tent, the rays that were stabbing the darkness illumined the bell buttons of the gray coats, and for a brief moment gleaming forms with happy laughing faces filled the picture and then into the darkness of the Plain quickly disappeared.

Such reveries, however, are usually interrupted by a sharp voice calling:

“Turn out the second relief!” “Hurry up, you plebes,” and away the novitiates scamper to perform their first guard tour. As the relief marches around the graveled paths under the command of a very military corporal, the plebe has, in spite of his feeling of uncertainty, a sensation of pride in being entrusted with the guard of a part of the camp. Each time that the corporal commands “Relief Halt No. 2!” and the rifles hit the ground in unison, a pleasurable thrill pervades his being, a consciousness of a certain importance. Before very much pride can swell his breast, he is brought back to reality by the stern corporal exclaiming, “Wake up, Mr. Dumbguard, and come to port arms!” or “Drag in your chin!” In goes the chin, and the shoulders instinctively draw to the rear. Glory was brief; humiliation reigns anew.

Then commences in earnest the lonely two hours of marching up and down, back and forth, at the end of which time the nine pounds of the rifle has tripled at least. The arms ache, and legs feel as if they would bore holes in the body.

The early part of the tour is filled with interest. The animation in some company streets in contrast to the silence in others, the occasional tinkling of mandolins, the cries from one tent to another, the laughter over a surreptitious bucket of lemonade, the Y. M. C. A. phonograph, the confusion over the wash lists, scampering cadets noisily returning from hops and concerts—all keep a sentinel from thinking of himself. It is not until the three taps of the drum, when the camp is magically plunged into obscurity and silence, that the plebe begins to feel the monotony of his duty and, while walking mechanically back and forth on his post, to become introspective.

The stillness of the camp only accentuates his slow nonchalant step on the path. In his imagination the air seems to be filled with invisible spirits—the spirits of the night that have come forth. First he is conscious of only a few timid ones here and there, but as the hours wear on they seem to grow bolder and bolder, filling the surrounding atmosphere and whispering in his ear their ghostly messages. Each nerve becomes more alert as he listens for the crunch, crunch, crunch of some official step on the gravel. How vivid and eerie seem his surroundings! The lonesome hours of the night strike a sympathetic chord in his sensitive nature and the balmy stillness calls forth his starry fancies. At this hour when his comrades lie in their tents bewitched by sleep, the most beguiling of enchantments, he is conscious that

another mysterious world is awakening all around him in the solitude and silence. The air is filled with fairies holding their imperceptible revels. He hears the rustling of the leaves, the intermittent chattering of the crickets, the soughing of the breeze in the branches, as if the trees in great distress were calling mournfully to each other. Should this be the first time that he is alone at night on post, he is a little afraid, and starts at the faintest sound. It seems that when man reposes, the *Things* come forth to their daily tasks, performed in a world unknown to us.

Never will he forget, however, the ineffable beauty of the scene, so beautiful that he is filled with a little sadness. The buildings across the Plain, stern and melancholy even in the darkness, seemed to be companion sentinels ever watchful over their traditions, and guarding the sleeping hills dimly discernible through their misty blankets. Occasionally a graceful river steamer, like some huge Jack-o'-Lantern ruffling the smooth waters of the Hudson, glides softly by under the cliff, her throbbing engines seeming to send forth a certain warmth that dispels the chill of the early morning.

It is at this hour especially that his thoughts wander to his "ain Folk" and reveal to his senses the full aroma of his days at home.

The clanking of a sword in the darkness calls him back to earth and to the realization that the dreaded inspection is at hand.

"Halt! Who goes there?" he quickly challenges.

"Corporal of the Guard," answers a sepulchral voice from the shadows.

"Advance, Corporal of the Guard, with the countersign," uncertainly commands the plebe. When within whispering distance, the corporal faintly breathes the countersign, "Saratoga," or "Burgoyne" (or maybe Tannhäuser or Dumbguard, to test the sentinel), whereupon the corporal is allowed to pass by the sentinel's order:

"Advance, Corporal of the Guard."

In the eyes of the yearling corporal, a plebe is habitually wrong, so that for a few trying minutes the benighted sentinel endeavors to "take charge of his post and all government property in view," while his preceptor picks him to pieces, his bearing, his accoutrements, his knowledge, admonishing him at intervals, to "Drag in his chin—way in." But soon, the solitude of the night begins to work even upon the yearling corporal constraining him to indulge in a partial intimacy with the plebe, adding in softened tones:

"Mister, where are you from?"

"South Carolina, sir," proudly responds the sentinel, touched by the upper-classman's near-cordiality.

With a gruff "Pretty fine State, mister," the corporal virtuously departs to interrogate his next victim.

How welcome now is the first faint tread of the relief as it makes its bi-hourly round to take the sleepy sentinel back to the guard tent where a bed of camp stools awaits his aching muscles.

The tour of guard of a new cadet is sometimes made uncomfortable by the pranks of the upper-classmen, although since the abolition of hazing at West Point, this form of diversion has greatly diminished. The regulations against hazing have been made so stringent that few cadets indulge in the practice. As a matter of fact hazing no longer exists at the Military Academy. A few heedless chaps from time to time, forgetful of the future, unconscious of the heartburns that they will suffer later on, indulge in hazing the plebes, but they pay the price for their fun. Formerly, hazing was tolerated among the cadets because some of its features were not harmful or objectionable, but, as in all cases where a little liberty is granted to lads of immature judgment, license followed. The practice was carried too far and moderation ceased to exist. In 1901, at the instance of a former cadet's parents, Congress ordered an investigation of hazing conditions, with the result that the Superintendent was directed to abolish all semblance of mistreatment of plebes by upper-classmen.

The more vicious practices disappeared at once, but from time to time investigation revealed isolated cases of the innocent kind. In the days of hazing, the favorite and most injurious punishment meted out to a plebe, if he were at all fresh, or "B. J." as the cadets say, was a series of exercises known as "eagles." The new man would be taken in a tent, stripped to the waist, and compelled to execute a setting-up exercise, "Full bend knees." The knees are separated and bent as much as possible; point of knees forced forward and downward, heels together; trunk and head erect; but instead of placing the hands on the hips, he was required to raise the arms laterally. It is not the exercise itself that was

injurious, but the duration of the punishment. Some men were required to “eagle” 100 or 150 times without a rest, and if they had committed a particularly heinous offense, this physical rebuke was administered under the broiling sun in the “catacombs.” Another form of punishment consisted in making plebes, stripped to the waist, hold pieces of matches or tissue paper, between their shoulder blades for half an hour or more, while their tormentors stood around insisting that they flatten their chins to their necks.

But this punishment was not viewed by the plebes with as much dismay as was the servitude to “Tabasco Sauce.” The prowling yearlings would descend into the Fourth Class sink, line up the plebes, and order them to stick out their tongues, upon which they dashed a flop or two of the burning liquid and fled. Sometimes, at the Mess Hall, as much as half a teaspoonful was meted out for some unconscious transgression by the plebe of the upper-classmen’s wishes. Fortunately the above practices have long since disappeared.

On the other hand, the greater part of the hazing consisted of what is known at college as “fagging,” such as dragging water, sweeping tents, making beds, cleaning brasses and rifles, making lemonade, running errands, sewing buttons on white trousers, etc. Each upper-classman selected a plebe for his “special duty man” to perform the aforementioned tasks. Most of the plebes did the duty cheerfully, buoyed up by the thought that next year their turn to have a plebe would arrive. A large part of the hazing, moreover, was the so-called “deviling” the plebes, a generic term applied to all kinds of humorous and mischievous pranks. Any cadet, for example, who

possessed any peculiarity of size, appearance, or temperament was given a "tech" or technical name, to be used always in lieu of his own. One of my classmates, whose tent was in a part of the camp called "Paradise Alley," was given in consequence of his auburn hair the following "tech" with strict instructions to use it no matter who asked him his name. In reply, therefore, to the same inquiry, "Who are you?" many times daily, he scrupulously replied:

"I am a too-loo-loo bird, sir! Peep-y-ty-peep, sir! Poop-y-ty-poop! Ah! ... there. I'm the sunshine of Paradise Alley, sir; I am a queen, sir. My hair is sky-blue pink with a heavenly border, sir! Don't you think I'm handsome, sir? I don't give a damn, sir!"

This "tech" became famous, the peep-y-ty-peep part fastening itself upon him as a nickname. Of course, all of these pranks were carried on *sub rosa* and presumedly without the sanction or knowledge of the authorities. One night, however, the cadet was detailed for guard for the first time. It happened that his tour of duty was from 2 A.M. to 4 A.M., those awful hours of the night. "Peep-y-ty-peep" was patrolling his post ready to charge anything that came along. Suddenly the huge shadow of a cavalry Tactical officer with a rattling saber and jingling spurs loomed out of the darkness. Frantically "Peep-y-ty-peep" charged down the post screaming, "Halt! Halt! who's thar?" (in good old Alabama English), until most of the sleeping cadets in the vicinity of the post were awakened. After a few minutes of backing and filling the massive cavalry officer arrived in front of the now thoroughly bewildered "sunshine of Paradise Alley," and began to ask him his orders. Poor old "Peep-y-ty-peep" forgot them all, general and special. After vain, fruitless efforts to obtain an

expression of opinion of some sort from the sentinel, this officer said in desperation: “Who are you, anyway?” Whereupon perfectly seriously the rooky sentinel cried at the top of his voice, while the nearby tents shook with laughter, “I’m a too-loo-loo bird, sir! Peep-y-ty-peep, sir! Poop-y-ty-poop, sir! Ah...! there. I’m the sunshine of Paradise Alley, sir! I’m—” The Tactical officer hurriedly disappeared.

Such incidents as the above kept the plebes from becoming too depressed. The fun of the upper-classmen found many other outlets. On days when watermelons were served in the Mess Hall, the plebes were required at the conclusion of the meal to fill their mouths with seeds, and thus loaded to the gunwales to march back to camp. The wriggling, squirming, slippery little black particles fought with one another to burst open the encircling mouth *en cul de poule* and leap to freedom, and occasionally their efforts were successful, on the march back to camp, to the detriment of the blouse of the plebe’s front rank file. More frequently, however, upon arrival at camp, the plebes of A Co. were lined up at six paces from those of B Co., and at a given signal the human machine guns belched forth their glossy black bullets. One upper-classman ordered me to gather a handful from the battlefield and plant them around his tent. To my dismay and chagrin they sprouted, whereupon I was instructed to care for them, keep them in health or sickness, and train the growing vines on slender cords.

The plebes were hardly allowed a moment to themselves. Every spare moment was employed in cleaning guns, brasses and other equipment, chiefly of upper-classmen for whom one happened to be a “special duty man.” If some unoffending sparrows

alighted in the company streets, half a dozen yearling voices rang out, “Turn out, you plebes, and chase those eagles!” Lads in all sorts and conditions of undress fell precipitately out of their tents, bayonets in hand, to drive away the innocent feathered marauders. If an upper-classman wished to know the time, he would yell, “*Quelle heure est-il?*” a whole chorus replied, “Two o’clock, sir!” Again, every plebe was required upon inquiry to give his P. C. S., or previous condition of servitude. Those who had none, never having worked in their lives, were made to answer “schoolgirl,” as a mark of immaturity and unworldliness. Never was a plebe permitted to say: “I don’t know.” “Say something, Mr. Dumbguard,” was the admonishment followed by: “If you cannot think of anything, say ‘steamboat’! Never say that you don’t know!”

I once stood behind a man in ranks who weighed, he said, 190 pounds. I weighed but 120. It became my daily duty to weigh and report to him how much of his frail body I, as his near rank file, left uncovered and exposed to the elements. When a plebe was on guard at night, some of the yearlings would appear on his post covered with sheets which they fluttered at a great rate.

“Halt! Who goes there?” cries the sentinel.

“A flock of angels,” was the reply, and before the sentinel could get the corporal of the guard, the flock had flown.

The *pièce de résistance* of the camp was, however, a

rat funeral for which elaborate preparations were made. Efforts for days were exerted to catch a rat or a mouse, but if neither could be beguiled into the trap, a grasshopper served the purpose. In a plebe's tent an imposing catafalque, equal to that prepared for any crowned head, was constructed of wooden lockers covered with black rubber ponchos. Upon the top of this bier surrounded by candles was Mr. Rat.

During the night preceding the obsequies a guard of honor of the plebes, fantastically dressed, kept a running watch over the fast-stiffening rodent. Next day, after drill, came the funeral. Orders were issued by the upper-classmen for all plebes to attend and for those having musical instruments to appear with them. One plebe was detailed to act as chaplain and prepare the funeral oration, another as leader of the band, another as chief mourner. The remainder of the plebes were the afflicted relatives whose weeds were the most bizarre and fantastic costumes that they could create. In the procession, therefore, were plebes in underdrawers and dress coats buttoned in the rear, hats reversed, breeches with no shoes, shoes without breeches, ponchos over nature only, and sometimes *in puris naturalibus*. Each mourner, moreover, came with a galvanized bucket to catch his tears.

First appeared the band composed of mandolins and guitars, a stray violin, and perhaps a lonely cornet, followed by the deceased borne upon a canvas stretcher strewn with dandelions. To the tune of Chopin's funeral march, the grotesquely arrayed mourners followed the bier, chanting from time to time a parody written for the music and entitled "Somebody Hit Me with a Codfish Ball!" At a signal from the chief mourner the cortège halted to allow

the plebes to deliver themselves with abandon to their grief. By order, they raised the galvanized buckets to catch the "tears that stopped the flood-gates of their eyes," while they filled the air with agonized mournings and lamentations. If the sobbing and blubbering appeared too faint, the upper-classmen who lined the route increased the wailings by yelling, "Weep louder, you plebes!"

At the grave, somewhere in the rear of the camp, the "chaplain," "Daddy" Singles, spoke feelingly of the departed one's nobility of soul. The gnawing grief of the multitude gave way once more to despair (and usually to laughter) as they lowered into the ground poor old Mr. Rat, whose rigid whiskers gave him an amused expression, as if he were enjoying his honorable end.

After two months' training in camp, the cadets return to barracks to begin their academic duties. At once, all nonsense ceases, and the new cadet is in no wise interfered with, even in fun. The routine changes completely and the day becomes fuller. Reveille is a half hour later, but the work increases and there are fewer leisure moments.

It is to the more serious and inexorable side of his training that the cadet must now turn. Life in barracks is more sedate, more formal, more cold than the free existence of camp where he and his comrades were living close to Nature. The time has arrived to renounce the pleasure of sleeping in the open, of breathing the fragrant out-of-doors, of living in the midst of scenery that appeals to every æsthetic

faculty. It is in the rooms of barracks that the next nine months must be passed, the severe unadorned rooms whose bareness, however, is forgotten in the ineffable sweetness of the friendship of one's roommate. At no place, perhaps, are closer friendships formed than at West Point. They are not of the whirlwind kind so common elsewhere today, that sweep one off his feet for the time being. Nor are they like some great roaring wind that shakes one's nature to its depths and then leaves him bruised and torn, but wide awake at last, to spend its force in other directions. Rather are they friendships of slower growth, but deep and sincere, belonging more to a mature age than to the irresponsible years of a cadet when his enthusiasm, his likes and dislikes, seem to be the only things necessary to foster.

The difficulties of his studies, the homesickness, the fatigue of the drills, the irksomeness of the routine, are all lightened by the intimacy with his chum, by the smile of sympathy, or the word of encouragement that greets him at all times. It is a great privilege to live in close contact with a human being and be allowed a glimpse into his soul. It compensates for all the stony paths of life, for all hardships, and sends one forth to his duties with a feeling of joy and gladness, strong in heart and thankful to God.

In every room in barracks dwell two chums, each the "wife" of the other. The increased number of cadets and the negligence of Congress to provide extra barracks have caused the introduction of Mormonism, for in some rooms are three chums, each with *two* "wives."

The most striking feature about the rooms is their plainness. Here the cadet is "allowed not more than nature needs," or scarcely more, for an inventory of the furniture discloses two iron cots, one iron washstand, two plain wooden tables, two wooden chairs, and two steel clothespresses. The walls and floors are bare, for the Regulations prohibit rugs, carpets, pictures, placards, banners, or any other adornment. Upon the plain black iron mantel in the middle is a mirror, flanked by black tin frames containing the hours of instruction and a time schedule designed to indicate at all times the whereabouts of the occupants of the room. Not to have the hours of instruction correctly posted is a military offense. No matter where the cadet is, at recitation, barber shop, church, lecture, hospital, library, his card must so indicate. In addition, a small inexpensive clock may be kept on the mantel.

To give each occupant of the room a little privacy, a wooden partition juts out half way into the room dividing this space into two alcoves, in which are placed the cots. During the day the mattresses are folded and upon them the bedding is piled. Only during release from quarters, and after 9:00 P.M., are the beds allowed to be made down and used. Along the sides of each alcove are hooks for the clothing, which must be hung in a prescribed manner; for example, 1st hook, raincoat; 2d hook, overcoats; 3d, sweater coat, and so on. The shoes are aligned toes out, along the side of the bed, in a definite order, the high overshoes as right guide, then the low overshoes, and other shoes according to height.

Upon the top of the clothespress are the books, arranged according to height, newspapers, periodicals, stationery, cameras, and tobacco. In the

shelf section each of the various articles of clothing has a prescribed place, and in the coat section the uniforms are hung in a regular order. Only on the top shelf of the clothespress may the cadet keep a photograph.

In front of and against the alcove partition is the washstand with its two wash bowls. The water, hot and cold, is drawn from a hydrant in the hall. This arrangement is a great luxury in comparison with the old days when, to heat water for shaving, we poured it over a joint in the radiator.

In barracks as in camp there is a room orderly who is responsible for the condition, cleanliness, and general police of all parts of the room. The cadets sweep their own rooms and make their own beds. The halls are swept by the civilian policemen, who also scrub periodically the floors of both rooms and halls. By Regulations, cadets are not allowed valets, nor are they permitted to own an automobile, horse, or dog.

The cadets are in uniform, of course, at all times. Every detail of their clothing is prescribed. The collars, for example, must project above the coat collar just one eighth of an inch, and a like display of cuff is required. Only certain kinds of shoes may be worn, and certain kinds of gloves both for drills and hops. Although not prescribed by Regulations, a custom of long standing among the cadets prohibits the plebes from wearing their overcoats with the end of the capes thrown back over the shoulder, nor may they wear lisle thread gloves to chapel, but must content themselves with the thick, coarse Berlin gun glove. The lowered capes of the plebes give them an air of humility alongside of the upper-classmen, and

the gun gloves accentuate the crudity of the poor plebe's military appearance.

The day is filled with duties. From the return of the Battalion from breakfast until 8:00 A.M., is a study period. From 8:00 A.M. until 12:35 P.M., the different classes attend recitations in the prescribed courses, or perhaps have instruction in gymnastic exercises or in riding. Dinner comes at 12:40 P.M., after which recitations are held until 3:50 P.M. In the fall and spring drills commence at 4:00 P.M., followed by parade at 5:30 P.M., and retreat and supper at 6:30 P.M.

Cadets do not proceed individually to their classrooms, but are formed in the area of barracks in sections, under the command of a section marcher, who, after reporting to the officer of the day any absentees, marches his men to their section rooms.

In like manner there is a meal formation. The Battalions are formed in front of barracks and marched by the two senior captains to the Mess Hall. Just as much observance to step, alignment, and bearing is required as though marching to parade.

Upon entering the hall, "at ease" is commanded, whereupon the cadets proceed quietly to their places at table and remain standing back of their chairs until the cadet captain commands: "A Co., take seats." The food is always ready so there is no delay. Thirty minutes are allowed for breakfast and supper, and forty for dinner.

As soon as seated, cadets begin to talk and laugh. The only restriction upon them is that they must conduct themselves at mess like young gentlemen.

No throwing of food or waste is tolerated. One first-classman, known as the table commandant, is in charge of each table and is held responsible for all breaches of regulations upon the part of the cadets thereat.

Civilian waiters bring the food from the kitchen and place it upon the table. The cadets are then required to help themselves. Custom makes the three or four plebes at each table perform the most onerous duties. One plebe, known as the "water corporal" pours the water and milk. Another, the "meat corporal," carves the "bone," and another, the "gunner," pours the coffee, and exercises a general supervision over the supply. Their duties keep them very busy, for the upper-classmen constantly demand food.



Marching to Barracks from Dinner

The Academic Buildings

The life at the Mess Hall is replete with customs, and the vocabulary of the cadets filled with terms unintelligible to the uninitiated. Some of their customs would not be approved in polite society but would be, perhaps, by modern efficiency. If, for example, a man at the end of the table wishes more water or milk, bang! goes his glass on the table preliminary to its flight through the air to the outstretched nervous hands of the "water corporal." The plebe eats in spasms, so to speak, one eye on his food, and the other on the alert for aërial glasses.

"How's the cow?" yells an upper-classman, meaning how much milk is in the pitcher.

"Almost dry, sir!" replies the plebe.

"Milk her again!" is commanded as the glass comes speeding down.

Every morning the "gunner" who sits at the end of the table, in capacity of hostess, so to speak, "sounds off" the number of days until June. Instead of grace, he commences the meal, "282 days until June, sir!" On the 300th, 200th, 100th day before June, the plebes write speeches in which they are allowed great latitude in satirizing the upper-classmen. The yearling who has been particularly annoying during the year sees all of his faults held up to ridicule, but he must swallow his medicine at the hands of the plebe.

It is a real treat to see the men at mess. No melancholy stillness pervades the Mess Hall. One can

hardly hear himself in the din of rattling dishes, knives, forks, the peals of laughter, the roar of eight hundred voices all talking at once, punctuated by the plebes repeatedly shrieking, “Bread! please!” or whatever they want. In beholding them, one realizes vividly the meaning of the expression “teeming with life.”

Occasionally, orders are read in the Mess Hall by the Adjutant. It would seem impossible to get the attention of the cadets, but when he commands:

“Bát-tál-yón ... at-ten-tion!” the roar almost instantly subsides, like a balloon suddenly pierced. A wave of silence engulfs the hall, accentuated at times by the fall of a fork or spoon on the tiled floor. Quietly the cadets sit, as the Adjutant reads his order, on “skins” (delinquencies). There are no soft notes in his tone. They are all fortissimo and run together until they become “monotonous,” like the hum of a factory. Some mischievous cadet, unable to bear the enforced inactivity, enlivens a small group around him by stealthily firing a bread ball at an unobserving neighbor.

Each cadet has a silver napkin ring with his name and class inscribed thereon. At graduation all of the rings are melted into a loving cup which is given to the member of the class who has the first son. This child is known as the “Class boy.”

Just before the conclusion of the meal the first captain makes an inspection, calls the Mess Hall to attention, and commands: “1st Battalion, rise.” The cadets file out quietly, form in front of the Mess Hall, and return to their barracks.

The rooms are subjected to a continual series of inspections. First, there is a rather superficial inspection by the subdivision inspectors, cadets of the First Class, twenty minutes after reveille. They give the rooms a *coup d'œil* chiefly to see that the floors have been swept and the bedding folded and piled. During the forenoon, the Tactical officer in charge of the company makes a careful survey of everything. This is known as the "Tac" inspection, and may occur any time from 8:00 A.M. to 11:00 A.M. Until the "Tac" makes his morning visit the cadets are required to wear their uniforms buttoned. The majority of the cadets sit around in their sweater coats until they hear the authoritative knock of the "Tac" on the doors of the first-floor rooms. They then quickly don their blouses until after he leaves, when sweaters are again brought forth. This time is a study period and it is almost impossible to concentrate on problems that make you feel like tearing your hair, when dressed in a tight-fitting uniform.

When roommates attend morning recitations at different periods, the first-hour men are notified of the inspection by their comrades who leave the mirror turned to the wall as a signal, or, sometimes, just a sign—"He has." Once a Tactical officer with a sense of humor traced in the dust across the face of a cadet's mirror, during his absence, "He has."

Upon the return from first-hour recitations the divisions ring with shouts, "Has he?" "Has he?" mingled with the cries to the plebe mail carrier of, "Mr. Dumbguard, has the mail?"

After dinner the officer of the day inspects to see that

the cadets are not visiting and that the rooms are in order. During the evening study periods, from about 7:30 to 9:30 P.M., the cadet sentinels posted in the halls of barracks inspect three times. They open the doors of each room, inquiring, “All right, sir?” whereupon the occupants reply, “All right, sir!” or “Cadet Ducrot is absent.” The reply “All right” signifies that all occupants are present, or if any are absent that their absence is authorized. Any cadet who intentionally makes an incorrect report is dismissed from the Academy.

The day ends, as it begins, with an inspection of the subdivision inspectors. At the three taps of the drum in the Area, cries of “Lights out!” fill the air. The buildings are plunged into darkness except for a dim hall light, and the inspectors, armed with bull’s-eye lanterns, flit through the halls like nervous fireflies. Each door is hurriedly opened; a beam of light seeks first one bed then the next, while the dark form on the threshold calls out sharply, “All in?” “All in, sir!” replies the room orderly from the depths of the alcove. Bang! goes the door and the shadow disappears. From all the divisions the fireflies swarm into the Area and align themselves like a string of shining beads in front of the officer of the day to whom they report.

For all breaches of regulations the cadets are reported, “skinned” in their parlance. The list of delinquencies is read out at retreat, and the next morning the cadet must submit a written explanation of the offense. The majority of the reports are for minor offenses, such as lates, absences, inattention,

buttons off uniform, and so on. Ordinarily, no explanation for these offenses is requested, although the cadet has a right to offer one if he so desires. The more serious offenses, however, must be explained.

In their explanations cadets must confine their statements to plain facts. No criticism or argumentation is allowed. Occasionally some wit transcends the limit and amuses himself for the moment at the expense of his conduct grade. Once a report was entered against a cadet for having worn his night-shirt to the Drawing Academy. It seems that, lacking a plain white shirt, he hastily donned a night-shirt, stuffing the flowing tails in his trousers. He was betrayed, however, by the blue embroidery down the front. An instructor, seeing the queer garment, reported the cadet. Since he had been obliged to attend a number of lectures in drawing, at which he invariably fell asleep, he submitted the following facetious explanation to the Commandant of Cadets:

SIR:

In explanation of the report “wearing a night-shirt to the Drawing Academy on the 10th inst.” I have the honor to state that I heard that there was to be a lecture in drawing; consequently, I wore my night-shirt.

I need not add that he walked a number of

punishment tours for his wit.

The punishments that may be awarded a cadet are:

(*a*) Confinements; that is, restriction to room during release from quarters.

Restriction of limits.

Deprivation of privileges.

Punishment tours.

Reprimands.

Reduction of officers or non-commissioned officers to the grade of private.

Loss of furlough.

(*b*) Suspension.

Dismissal.

Punishment tours are of one-hour duration, during which time the cadet walks an assigned beat. On Wednesday and Saturday afternoons the Area is filled with cadets walking to and fro, like pendulums, each tracing in the gravel a little path. They resemble in their animation the goings and comings of a colony of ants. No cadet enjoys walking tours. It is viewed as a particularly disagreeable punishment, much worse than serving a confinement in one's room, where he may "bone fiction," chasing away the gloom of imprisonment with some interesting book. In the winter months the chill and snow fill their thoughts and hearts as they pace to and fro, beating their hands together for warmth. But it is in the autumn and spring when the athletic contests

with outside teams take place that the misery of walking tours becomes terribly acute. The cheering of the fortunate cadets witnessing the games is like some magnet which draws and draws. The longing must be resisted and stifled while they continue upon their monotonous walk, chained to an inexorable task.

The work demanded of a cadet is hard, but without the restrictions, obstacles, the petty annoyances, the young plebe that comes to West Point so plastic and yielding would never grow and develop. At first the limitations that surround him baffle and bewilder him for a time, but as the days pass by and he begins to be imbued with the spirit of the Corps, and to feel the traditions and atmosphere of West Point, he insensibly rises superior to every annoying restriction. He may indulge in occasional grumbling and ill-humor but what of that? He knows now that a reason exists for every obstacle, and he sees in the hardships a way that leads to the development of his higher self. His moral force is gradually crystallized and he gains the spirit of willingness to do his duty toward the Academy and his little bit in keeping strong the spirit of West Point.

The main idea of West Point after all is to develop the mind and character of the cadet, to instill into him the proper ideas of discipline. It does not aim for a discipline where a man’s spirit or will is broken, so that he obeys through fear, but a discipline of the soul, wherein a cadet performs his duty for the deed’s sake. Without this high moral spirit, no army can be successful, despite the most brilliant galaxy of officers.

CHAPTER VII
THE DISCIPLINE OF THE MIND

The longer a cadet remains at West Point, the clearer and finer becomes his point of view. During the first few months of his career, a glimpse of which we had in the previous chapter, he is so busy learning the mechanism of the drills, the care of his person and equipment, and familiarizing himself with all of the strange names and unusual customs of military life that his point of view is more or less clouded.

Little by little, during the summer encampment, as soon as the newness of his surroundings begins to wear away, he finds himself undergoing a change of heart; he experiences a new feeling and appreciation of his work and a sort of exhilaration of discovering the progress that he is making in his daily tasks. For example, instead of going out to parade in a dazed and mechanical manner, he marches forth filled with pride that he is really a member of so *élite* a Corps. He strives to do his bit with all his might. He lends a close attention to all commands so that no act of his will mar the appearance of his company, and does his utmost to assume the correct position of a soldier that is incessantly dinned into his ears by the ever alert file closers. He feels that he is changing, but does not understand just how. In reality his point of view is swinging around, it is clearing up, and the new cadet is beginning to be animated with the spirit of West Point.

The scales seem to drop from his eyes. He is no longer concerned so completely with his troubles and difficulties, with his inability to get into his white trousers without mussing them badly, with his capacity for doing “wooden” things, or with all of the thousand and one little heartburns for things done and left undone.

On the contrary, the incidents of his surroundings that are unrelated to himself begin to interest him. With quiet amusement he watches the antics of the yearlings, envying them their careless nonchalant air. His heart goes out in sympathy to some fellow plebe who has just incurred the displeasure of an upper-classman. He secretly admires the military bearing of the cadet officers, the fit of their blouses, their erect and graceful carriage. To him they represent the ideal in the flesh toward which he is striving. There is a certain something about the manner in which they perform their duties that inspires the plebe to extra efforts. In the hope of receiving a word of praise from the cadet captain at inspection before parade, an extra rub is given to the rifle or breastplate, and more care is taken in climbing into those stiff white trousers. He listens with the greatest interest to the chatter about the approaching Academic term and accepts with gratitude the counsels sometimes offered him by the cadet captain.

As the camp draws to a close, not only the captain but all of the upper-classmen give the plebe gratuitous advice about the coming Academic year. At every formation while awaiting the sounding of the assembly, little groups gather in the company streets and interrogate the plebes as to their previous mental training. A note of restlessness begins to pervade the camp as the month of September draws

nigh. Once again the books must be taken down from the shelves and hours of study devoted to the solution of problems.

The plebe views the close of the camp with a sigh of relief mingled with not a little anxiety. It is true that he is glad to get into barracks where he will have a little more personal liberty, and be free from the incessant drilling, drilling. On the other hand, the opening of the Academic year fills him with some misgivings about his ability to master the studies and fulfill his ambition to become an officer.

Before he is really aware of the flight of the days, September the first has arrived. He leaves the life of camp where almost the entire day has been devoted to military exercises of one sort or another and plunges into the Academic work. A new sort of life begins and the routine of the day is readjusted. With determination he sets out to climb the stony path of knowledge that alone will lead him to his commission. The branch of the service that he will eventually select is as yet unknown to him, but as he proceeds in his career at the Academy he will have a taste of the duties of each arm, and he will later on be able to choose his branch with intelligence.

The beauty about the West Point system of training officers is that it educates them for all branches of the Army, for the line and for the staff. When a man graduates, he is assigned either to the Corps of Engineers, the Ordnance, Artillery, Cavalry, or Infantry according to his choice based on his class standing. The highest men usually select the Corps of Engineers, although it is not unusual for a man who is recommended for the Engineers by the Academic Board to choose some branch of the mobile Army.

The curriculum to which our young cadet must devote nine months of the year is highly scientific and technical. The corner-stone of the course is mathematics, and the great mass of the structure is made up of the exact sciences. Primarily, the curriculum is designed to give the cadet a liberal education and to turn out a man with sharpened mental processes. It does not lay the greatest emphasis upon the training of cadets in the practical duties that pertain to any particular arm or corps. The reasons for this are very sound.

It is the belief of all officers who have given the question of military education any thoughtful study that the first requisite of any army is a corps of officers trained in the essentials of their profession. What really does this mean? It simply means that officers of the Army should be well educated men, not only those who are to go into the technical branches such as the Engineers and the Ordnance, but the line officers as well. The authorities at West Point have therefore developed a broad scientific course, fully convinced that the mental discipline, powers of investigation, and accurate reasoning necessary in solving problems in the exact sciences are the same mental qualities that are needed whether in planning a great campaign, building a Panama Canal, or fighting the savage Moro in the distant Philippines.

The advisability of giving all cadets, those destined for the line as well as for the staff, the same education has been questioned more than once. As long ago as 1843, a Board of Officers, of which General Scott was president, made certain criticisms of the course of instruction. It is interesting to quote the answer made by the Academic Board, for the

ideas set forth therein express in general the opinions held today:

> The Academic Board believes that one of the most important objects of the Academy is to subject each cadet, previous to his promotion to a higher grade in the Army, to a thorough course of mental as well as military discipline to teach him to reason readily and accurately to apply right principles to cases of daily occurrence in the life of a soldier. They are satisfied that a strict course of mathematical and philosophical study, with applications to the various branches of military science, is by far the best calculated to bring about this end, and that the present scientific course at the Academy, the result of the experience of many years, is in its main feature such a course.
>
> They are aware that many of the cadets, as is the case with most of those who pursue a scientific course at other institutions, will have little occasion to make practical applications of the many mathematical problems that they meet, and that they may have passed over certain problems without thoroughly understanding their meaning in all their points. Still, if the course has been thoroughly taught, the reasoning faculties will

> have been strongly exercised and disciplined and a system of habit and thought acquired which is invaluable in the pursuit of any profession, and as desirable for the infantry or dragoon officer as for any other officer in the service. The officer whose mind has thus been disciplined and who is not forgetful of the duty he owes to the government that has furnished him with opportunities so valuable, will acquire facts and information in whatever station the interests of the service may place him. This discipline and system he will learn at an early age only, and nowhere so well as during his term of service at the Academy.

In recent years, strong influences have been brought to bear on the Academy to change the course so as to make it more practical. The advocates of this change ignore the ends toward which West Point's course works, heretofore successfully, and desire to see cadets leave West Point with what they call a practical knowledge of the different arms. This means that they wish the graduated cadet to join his regiment well versed in the routine work of the Army, and would have West Point take precious time from mental training to teach a more complete knowledge of the mechanism of the drills. If West Point followed this advice, the graduated cadet would have a difficult road in solving the big problems that will arise in his career. If in the West Point course emphasis were laid upon the practical

work rather than upon the intellectual training, then the cadet would simply be storing up knowledge instead of learning how to think. When therefore any situation would arise, the tendency would be to make a requisition upon the storehouse for a solution. If there is no similar situation tucked away on the shelves of memory, that will serve as a guide, he will in many cases be at a loss how to proceed. Not so, however, if his mind has been trained correctly. He will work out his own solution.

Many people believe that the whole science of the military profession is embraced in a book of drill regulations whose practical demonstration on the drill and parade grounds constitutes all that is necessary to make a successful officer. They do not realize that battles are won first with the brain and then with the sword. They rather regard the work of officers much the same as manual labor that anyone can do, and they do not admit that any great amount of mental training for the officers is necessary.

I do not wish to give the impression that there is no practical training at the Academy—far from it. But I am glad to say that it has been allotted its proper place in the course. Once the theory is mastered, the practical is quickly learned afterwards. Any cadet with a trained mind can readily learn the practical duties that may be demanded of him as an officer.

It is an astonishing fact that I have heard West Point methods criticised in the Army because a young graduate upon joining his regiment did not know how to make out a *morning report*! Why should he? The fact that any boy of average intelligence can learn to make one out in fifteen minutes should be a complete answer to all demands that cadets should

be taught these trivialities at the Academy.

The criticism leveled at West Point by officers of the Army is unjust. Older officers expect too much of the graduated cadet. I have noticed that they demand of these young men, immediately upon joining, the same mature conception and efficient execution of certain duties as they themselves are able to display only after years of experience.

Upon graduation from West Point, I dare say that there is no more highminded, well-trained, and efficient body of young men in the world. The graduates join their commands brimming over with youth, intelligence, enthusiasm, and energy and ruled by intense loyalty. They want to do what is right. They want to go forward in their profession. They make every effort to perform well their duties. All that they need are leaders among their superiors who will develop their aspirations. Sometimes they encounter a distinct air of hostility, occasionally a petty attitude on the part of some older officers whose one ambition is to “put them in their place,” and, too frequently, simply indifference. The result is that the young officers quickly become a prey to the red tape, the dull routine, the narrowness of post life, or to the mental inertia of prolonged duty upon the border where almost every stimulating influence is absent. If only there were enough good leaders to take this wonderful material that the Academy sends forth annually and develop it, there is no telling to what heights these young officers would rise.

But to return to our plebe who makes his début in Academic work September the first. The evening before has been spent in earnest preparation for the lesson in mathematics, and he sets forth on this early

autumn day to grapple with the hardest study of his course.

First call for recitation is sounded at seven minutes before eight o'clock. The trumpeter, an enlisted man of the Army, blows "school call" first in the area of barracks, then outside of the north sally-port, on the Plain side of the buildings. The call is repeated several times, and as its notes float out on the air, the barracks begin to disgorge the cadets, sometimes singly, but more often in groups of twos and threes. The more prompt ones pile out on the cement walk, standing near their places in the ranks to await the assembly. The majority are laughing and talking or discussing the lesson, while others, thirsting for knowledge until the last, keep their noses in their books. Their comrades sometimes tease them, calling them "tenth-boners" in good-natured derision, or steal up behind them and shut their books for them saying, "Oh, come off spec-ing tenths," which means to desist from studying at the last moments to better the mark.

At one minute before assembly the cadet officer of the day, a straight young man in a red sash and red crossbelt (bound up, as Patsy O'Hara of 1904 wittily remarked, in his official red tape), takes his post in the center of the area and commands: "Form your sections!"

Instantly books are slammed, all noises, talking, laughing, skylarking, cease, and the scattered gray figures seem to magically form themselves into compact little squads under the direction of their section marchers who stand out in front counting them. The door of the Guardhouse opens and the O. C. (officer in charge) appears upon the "poop deck,"

stern, implacable, almost sphinx-like, and surveys coldly the formation. For the brief space of a few seconds all is quiet except for the occasional shuffling of a section that has misjudged its proper space. Then the trumpeter sounds the assembly. A few belated men are tearing to their places in ranks, running a race with the fading notes of the trumpet and landing bang! into the rear rank just in time to keep from being reported absent. The kind-hearted trumpeter often takes a deeper breath (especially in winter when he sees the belated ones recklessly dashing across the icy walks), and holds on to those last notes of assembly in a way that was never intended by the composer. God bless him!

Meanwhile the instructors are in the section rooms awaiting the arrival of their classes. Here and there in the windows of the rooms facing the area is an instructor gazing upon this class formation that is the same today as it was years ago, and that awakens in him a flood of memories of his own cadet days when he too set out to recite to an instructor who never seemed quite human. As he looks at the cadets forming, he realizes how distinctly the institution creates its types, and he is able to pick out certain individuals and say to himself:

“There goes so and so of my class!”

The great charm of West Point is that so many things never change. Some of the cadets, sons of graduates, are doing exactly as their fathers did at their age, and again a few cadets are reacting the youth of their grandfathers.

While the instructor is watching the cadets in the area, the section marcher reports to the officer of the

day all absentees in his section which he then marches off to the Academic Building. On the sections come in military formation straight to the classroom door. The halls of the building resound to the tramping of many feet as the cadets march along with muffled tread, thanks to O'Sullivan rubber heels that are fitted to every pair of shoes. When opposite the classroom door the section marcher commands:

"Section halt! Fall out!"

The cadets hang up their caps in the hall, file into the room, and stand rigidly at attention behind their desks. The section marcher enters, closes the door, takes his position in the center of the room facing the instructor, salutes, and reports:

"Sir, all are present," or "Cadet Ducrot is absent."

Mr. Ducrot now makes his acquaintance with Mathematics, the study that determines more than any other his standing at West Point. From the day that he commences his studies he feels that he must devote the greater amount of time to this subject, and with reason. A perusal of the tables of instruction shows that the greater proportion of time and weight is allotted to the mathematical studies. The total amount of time provided for in the course of instruction, including riding and gymnasium, is 192,900 minutes. If gymnasium and riding are deducted (11,205 and 10,860 minutes, respectively) there are left 170,835 minutes devoted to Academic work. Of this amount the pure mathematical subjects are allotted 76,555 minutes, and the non-mathematical subjects, 94,280 minutes.

These figures represent the time that is actually spent

in the recitation work. To give an accurate idea of the draught of these subjects upon the cadet's time, however, we should estimate the amount of time required for preparation plus the time spent in the section room. The lessons are so assigned that these preparations take the average cadet twice the time allotted to the recitation. Thus, in subjects having an hour and twenty-five minute recitations, the average cadet is expected to spend two hours and fifty minutes in preparation; and in subjects having one hour periods, two hours of preparation. Practical Surveying and Drawing are subjects for which no preparation is required.

Adding the preparation time to the recitation time we find the total relative amounts of time as follows:

Mathematical Subjects.	***Non-Mathematical Subjects.***
76,555	94,280
136,940	145,440
213,495	239,720

The time devoted to mathematical subjects is divided among only five departments, whereas the time divided among non-mathematical subjects is divided among nine departments. Again, each subject is weighted and the five mathematical subjects have almost as many units as the nine non-mathematical subjects. Out of the 2325 units required for graduation (leaving out of account the 200 allotted to conduct) the five mathematical departments have 1065 and the nine other departments have 1260. It is

no wonder that Mr. Ducrot wishes to make an auspicious beginning in a study that is so important to his future career. The conduct of the recitation that he attends for the first time is about the same in every department. In Mathematics, which is an exact science, the system is perhaps a little more rigid than in some of the non-mathematical departments.

As soon as the cadets have taken their seats the instructor asks:

“Are there any questions on the lesson?”

The cadets are then at liberty to ask for an explanation of any part of the lesson that they have not been able to comprehend. The officer uses his judgment as to the amount of time to be thus consumed. Sometimes he will take up half the recitation period to clear up the obscurities of the lesson, but if he has one of the lower sections he sometimes has to be on his guard, for the cadets on the days of hard lessons astutely ask many questions in order to consume the recitation period. I know one officer who always outwitted these youthful diplomats when they attempted to stave off the recitation. He would begin speaking so rapidly that no one could interrupt:

“Any questions-pages-one-two-three-four-too-late-close-your-books. Mr. Ducrot-take-the-first-front-board.”

Each cadet is sent to the blackboard with an enunciation, that is, some phase of the lesson to discuss, or perhaps the instructor may question a few men. The cadet writes his name on the board in the upper right-hand corner and proceeds to place upon

the slate enough data to assist him in his recitation. In Mathematics, he solves his problem; in other subjects the topic that he will develop orally.

As soon as the cadet is ready to recite he takes a pointer in his hand and faces the instructor and stands at attention until called upon. In order to test thoroughly the cadet's reasoning powers the instructor will sometimes lead him on along a false path, practically making the recitation himself, saying:

"Is not that so?" and again, "Is that not so?"

To which the lad, if not thoroughly sure of himself, will be betrayed into replying:

"Yes, sir!" "Yes, sir!"

Finally when the deduction has been rendered ridiculous, the officer will sharply say:

"That is perfectly absurd." The cadet receives a lesson that he does not forget. Once or twice as a cadet I was in this position and I know the feeling.

After each cadet is heard, he is given other problems with which to wrestle while the other cadets are reciting. When a principle of particular importance is to be demonstrated, all of the cadets are required to face about and give their close attention in order that they may all benefit from the instruction.

During a recitation a visit may be expected at any time from the Professor or Head of the Department. Upon his entrance, the cadets all rise and stand at attention until they are told to proceed with their work.

The Professor either listens to the cadets recite or conducts the recitation himself. The recitation continues until the bugler blows the “Recall” in the area. What a welcome sound is this to those few who have spent the hour at the board, without reciting, vainly staring at the blank slate in the hope of drawing some inspiration from its cold surface! They have been “bugling,” waiting for the bugle to sound “Recall.” They quickly drop chalk, eraser, pointer, and joyfully file out of the room exchanging with their co-conspirators sympathetic smiles, and surreptitiously “rubbing their bellies,” as a sign of excessive joy.

The instructor at West Point has one great advantage over his fellow instructors in the colleges. His time is not occupied with trifling on the part of the students. The cadets are so thoroughly disciplined by the Tactical Department that their deportment in class is irreproachable. It is very rare that the recitation is interrupted to make corrections other than academic. The cadets are held to a high standard of discipline all the time. In class they are not permitted to communicate with one another, but they talk freely with the instructor about points in the lesson.

So much for the actual recitation, the conduct of which seems so smooth and simple. In the background, however, there is an admirable organization that strives for a maximum of efficiency in the instruction.

Every department consists of the Professor or Head of the Department, an assistant professor, and the requisite number of instructors which varies with the size of the classes. In the Departments of Mathematics and Modern Languages, each of which

instructs two classes, the Professor is aided by an associate professor, besides the assistants.

The Professor is in complete control of his entire department. He prepares the courses of instruction, recommends the adoption of new text-books, or abolition of those in use, apportions the work among his instructors, conducts and supervises the conferences of his instructors, prepares and supervises the examination of the classes pursuing his course, is responsible for all property belonging to his department, and is the channel through which must pass all reports and official communications relating to departmental affairs.

In nearly all of the departments the Professor is able to standardize the instruction of the cadets by means of conferences with his instructors. These meetings are informal, partaking more of the nature of a *conversazione* in which the Professor outlines his wishes to his officers, emphasizing the points of the lesson that he wishes brought out. The conferences also offer to the instructors the opportunity to make suggestions to the Head of the Department in regard to the section-room work, pointing out the success or failure of certain features of the previous lesson.

The conferences are comparatively recent in the scheme of instruction at the Academy, but they are of great value to the officers. The result is that the instructor enters the section room with a feeling of confidence and a knowledge that his methods are approved in advance by his immediate chief. Moreover, the Professor is able to go from one section room to another and find that the teaching of the lesson is progressing uniformly. I have always considered the conference feature the greatest aid in

my work as an instructor, for besides the profit derived from the Professor's talk, there is always a constant interchange of ideas, of impressions, or perhaps a heated argument between the officers, all of which stimulate the mind and the imagination, and sharpen the wits. Furthermore, these meetings tend to produce harmony by drawing the officers together in a common cause. The introduction of conferences has markedly changed the former attitude of the instructor toward his work, so that instead of merely hearing the lesson and marking the cadet, as prevailed too frequently in years gone by, the officer is inspired to impart a maximum of knowledge and help to his student. I feel sure that the average of the teaching is rising year by year, due in large measure to the intelligent conduct of conferences by the various professors with their officer assistants.

In addition to their work in the preparation and teaching of the daily lessons, instructors are required to keep the record of the cadets' marks. For this purpose, pasteboard cards properly ruled for the days of the week, averages, and proportional parts are provided, one for each cadet. After the conclusion of the day's recitation the mark is entered by the instructor on the cadet's card, and at the end of the week, all of the marks are transferred to a weekly report that each instructor submits for the cadets under his charge. These reports, or "tenth sheets" as the cadets call them, are publicly posted in glass frames in the sally-port, where they remain for one week, during which time the cadets are at liberty to inspect them. In this manner, a cadet can always tell exactly what progress he is making, whether deficient or proficient. There is never any attempt at

secrecy, but, on the contrary, every facility is afforded the cadet to ascertain his standing. The pasteboard cards form the permanent record and are carefully filed in the department.

The weekly reports are usually posted every Saturday while the battalions are at inspection. Immediately upon breaking ranks, what a scramble ensues to get a peep at the result of the week's work! Struggling cadets elbow and crowd one another to get close to the frames, each heart beating in anticipation of the figures that mean for some success and for others failure. The difference of perhaps one tenth in the total will sometimes fill the lad with dejection for the rest of the afternoon.

No one is deprived of the privilege of consulting his marks. Even those cadets serving punishment, such as confinement to rooms, can obtain permission to inspect the reports. More often, however, they send some plebe to copy the marks for them. The publicity of the marking has an excellent effect upon the cadet, for he knows what each man in his section accomplished during the week and sees that no partiality is shown nor injustice done by the instructor.

The scale of marking that is used at West Point was introduced when Major Sylvanus Thayer was Superintendent in 1837. Upon this scale a perfect recitation receives a mark of 3.0; good is represented by 2.5; indifferent by 2.0; bad, 1.5; imperfect, 1.0; and complete failure 0.0. The instructor may mark as close as a tenth giving a 2.8 or a 2.1 or a 1.4 as the recitation merits.

Since the marks determine a cadet's graduation

standing and affect his whole career as an officer, they naturally are given by him no little consideration. Sometimes I think that the cadets give entirely too much thought to attaining a good grade rather than to the thorough mastering of the subject; that is, they have a tendency to develop the memory at the expense of the thinking functions. As I have explained before West Point methods are strictly opposed to such a system, and the departments discourage verbatim recitations. The marking offers many difficulties at an institution such as West Point because a difference of a few hundredths between two cadets' standing will alter their choice of a branch or Corps and affect their relative promotion by years. At colleges and universities this condition does not exist, for a man's standing has little connection with his future career.

The cadet is not allowed to select his own course, or follow his own inclinations in regard to the curriculum. The mental diet is prescribed and no deviation therefrom is permitted. The three broad fundamentals governing the Academic course are: first, that every cadet shall take every subject; second, that before advancement every cadet shall be proficient in every subject; and third, that every cadet must recite every day.

As regards the above principles there is, of course a little qualification in each, sufficient to admit of some flexibility in application. While no cadet is permitted to elect whether or no he will take a subject, but is required to take all of them, still, some of the more advanced cadets go further in the subjects. In nearly every department the higher men have advanced or special courses.

As for the second principle, a cadet who is deficient in any one subject is usually dismissed. Occasionally, however, where a man stands especially well in all of his studies but fails in one, he may be conditioned by the Academic Board, or in some cases turned back to join the next class. Among the cadets, he becomes known as a “turnback,” a name that usually sticks to him, but conveys no reproach or stigma.

Again, the cadet must recite every day. Owing to the small section of ten or twelve cadets the instructor is ordinarily able to hear every man, so that the studies must be prepared. There is no such thing at West Point as a “cut.” Sometimes, due to the lack of time, the instructor may not hear a few of the cadets, but this is rare. In such a case the cadet does not get a mark but is given what is colloquially known as “stay-back,” that is, a blank. The certainty that he must recite every day and that no failure can be hidden obliges each cadet to prepare his lesson with great thoroughness. The effect of this system on moral character is immediate. It inculcates attention to duty, habits of study and thought, and pride in achievement.

At West Point good intellectual performance is a duty just as much as guard, parade, or inspection, so that an unsatisfactory recitation due to the cadet’s negligence not only begets a bad mark, but not infrequently a punishment. Moreover, since the cadets realize that their final standing at graduation permits them to choose their branch of the service, they are keen to do their very best to beat the other fellows. This spirit of competition is fostered by transfers of cadets from one section to another either up or down, according to their weekly marks.

Cadets receive individual instruction in every subject. No man can therefore hide his lack of preparation because he is always called upon to develop some phase of the lesson. At the beginning of the term, the Fourth Classmen or plebes are arranged alphabetically into sections in which they remain for about six weeks. Then there is a general transfer or rearrangement of sections according to the marks made during this period. The top man in each section is the section marcher. Thereafter cadets rise and fall in the sections, either weekly or monthly as the Professor wishes. The transfers from one section to another are a great stimulant to the cadet. He gets the reward for his labor. Sometimes, however, in spite of determined efforts, some cadets lose sections, due perhaps to a lack of preparation prior to entrance; others go down through laziness or negligence.

The cadets that land in the last section are known as “The Goats” (in olden days, “The Immortals”), usually a carefree lot who never worry until the examinations roll around. They are a great contrast to the first section men who “bone tenths” with Prussian thrift. But whether “Goats” or first section men each one receives individual instruction.

Nor are the cadets who are low in their studies deprived of extra instruction. When Major-General Thomas H. Barry was Superintendent, he introduced a system permitting cadets to receive, during their recreation hours, extra instruction upon any back lesson. The cadets can therefore overcome the obstacles that prevent them from going forward in any particular study. Due to this system, many a cadet has been saved who otherwise would have been “found,” simply because he was slow and had

not had time to digest his lesson.

It is in the lower sections chiefly that humorous incidents occur to lighten the tension of the atmosphere. As an instructor in French, I had many a chuckle over the struggles of some of the Goats to master the tongue of *la douce France*. On one occasion a cadet was attempting to translate a passage in the reader. His efforts were futile. Few of the words meant anything to him. All at once he came to the proper name "Léopold, Duc d'Autriche." With a triumphant gleam at me who had been humiliating him with embarrassing questions, he proudly translated the phrase: "The leopard, the duck, and the ostrich."

On another occasion there was in the section a foreign cadet from Venezuela whose acquaintance with English was chiefly limited to swear words. While translating a passage in French in the presence of the Professor, he came across the sentence: *Mon Dieu, j'ai laissé tomber le vase.* Immediately he began:

"My God——"

"Oh no, Mr. Honduras," gently interposed the Professor.

"Oh Hell," he began once more.

"Dear no, Mr. Honduras, not so strong!" exclaimed the thoroughly shocked Professor. But Honduras understanding (maliciously I thought) that a stronger translation was wanted, ventured once more:

"——! ——! ——!"

Had Honduras been a little American boy, I am sure

that the Professor would have made him wash out his mouth with soap.

The success of the West Point system is largely due to several unique reasons. In the first place the authorities control the time of the cadets so completely that it can be utilized to the greatest advantage. Again, West Point's remoteness from any large city and the strict regulations that govern the privileges of the cadet remove the many temptations that consume the college man's time. To the same extent, the mind of the cadet is not diverted. Every effort is made to get the maximum mental results from the cadet's labor. He has regular hours of study, plenty of exercise, a judicious amount of recreation, and good wholesome food. In addition, the cadet is in a studious atmosphere. No opportunity is lost to impress upon him correct habits of study.

I dare say that at no other institution of learning is there such serious preparation of the lessons. The cadet's academic day contains but half an hour of leisure from 6:00 A.M. to 10:00 A.M. except during the extreme cold weather when drills are suspended the cadets have two hours in the afternoon. All during the day therefore when not at recitations, riding, or gymnasium, the cadets are studying, and the long study period is from 7:00 to 9:30 P.M. Although prohibited by Regulations, many men study after taps, especially those low in the class. To conceal the light they hang a leg of their trousers over the electric light, lowering the cord until it almost touches the table. Just a little circle of light shines upon the book, and not enough to be detected from without.

West Point is not indifferent to the performance of its

students. It cannot afford to be less exacting, but it has a powerful leverage over other institutions for it dangles before the cadet's view the prize of a commission in the Regular Army, a career in an honorable profession.

The course of instruction at the Military Academy develops in the cadet certain traits of character that are invaluable to him in a profession where, as an officer, he is constantly being called upon to meet all sorts of contingencies, to exercise his judgment, and to make decisions. His studies and duties broaden his mind, make him self-reliant, and teach him self-control. It is astounding to see the results obtained by the system. As a proof of the intellectual product of the Academy, I shall quote the following table, giving the occupations of the graduates who have gone into civil life where they have measured their strength with the graduates of other institutions of learning:

President of the United States	1
President of the Confederate States	1
Presidential candidates	3
Vice-Presidential candidates	2
Members of the Cabinet	4
Ambassador	1
Ministers from the United States to foreign courts	14
Chargés d'affaires to foreign courts	2
United States consuls-general and consuls	12
Members of the U. S. Senate and House of Representatives	24

United States civil officers of various kinds	171
Presidential electors	8
Governors of States and Territories	16
Bishop	1
Lieutenant-governors of States	2
Judges	14
Members of State Legislatures	77
Presiding officers of State Senates and Houses of Representatives	8
Members of conventions to form state constitutions	13
State officers of various grades	81
Adjutants, inspectors, and quartermasters-general of States and Territories	29
Officers of State militia	158
Mayors of cities	17
City officers	57
Presidents of universities and colleges	46
Principals of schools and academies	32
Regents and chancellors of educational institutions	14
Professors and teachers	136
Superintendent of Coast Survey	1
Surveyors-general of States and Territories	11
Chief engineers of States	14
Presidents of railroads and other corporations	87

Chief engineers of railroads and other public works	63
Superintendents of railroads and other public works	62
Treasurers of railroads and other corporations	24
Civil engineers	228
Electrical engineers	5
Attorneys and counsellors at Law	200
Superior general of clerical order	1
Clergymen	20
Physicians	14
Merchants	122
Manufacturers	77
Artists	3
Architects	7
Farmers and planters	230
Bankers	18
Bank presidents	8
Bank officers	23
Editors	30
Authors	179
Total	2371

The above list should be convincing that if methods of training which are primarily intended to develop officers can produce such signal and distinguished successes in every walk of civil life, no fault can be found with their soundness.

The Academic year is divided into two terms that end in the fall and the spring. A month prior to the conclusion of each term, each Department conducts a general review of the subjects studied that semester. Cadets who make a proficient average upon this review, which is generally written, are exempt from the examinations. These reviews are very thorough and searching. The questions are framed to test the cadet's real knowledge of the subject. In order to avoid all personal element entering into the marks, the papers are graded by all of the instructors, each marking one question. In this manner the marks are uniform and fair as possible, and no one instructor has any great influence in assigning to a man his class standing.

Following the reviews come the examinations for those who failed upon the review. These tests are also quite rigid, and in order to be declared proficient a man must make two thirds of the mark, .66 per cent. The examination papers are likewise marked by all of the instructors and by the Professor. In the event that a cadet fails he is reported to the Academic Board for their action. In general, if deficient in any one subject, the cadet is dismissed.

I feel how weak are any words that I might use to attempt to describe the despair into which a discharged cadet is plunged. For days he lives in an excruciating suspense awaiting the result of the examinations. The thought of wasted opportunity, the regret for lack of early preparation perhaps, and worse than all, the sense of failure torment him. It is bitter to renounce the camaraderie and friendship of his fellows and to see himself involuntarily separated from surroundings that he has come to love. At last the dread news comes. The Adjutant rises from his

seat in the Mess Hall and calls the Battalion to attention. Immediately a deathlike stillness pervades the cadet body. The gravity and dignity of the Adjutant's demeanor unconsciously inform the Corps that distressing news is about to be communicated. Slowly and distinctly the names are read out, one by one, and as they fall upon the straining ears of the cadets, they sound like so many death sentences for the unfortunate lads who are "found." A gloom of sorrow settles over the Corps and the companies file out of the hall in sympathetic silence. But the reality must be faced. Suitcases and trunks are packed, accounts are quickly settled, affectionate and emotional good-byes are said, and sadly the discharged cadets drop out of the ranks of the Corps. The long gray line closes up and once again marches forward to do battle with the Academic obstacles that block the road to graduation.

CHAPTER VIII
GROWING MUSCLES

Whenever the cadets leave the seclusion of West Point and appear in public in uniform, their erect carriage, their smart tight-fitting dress coats that show off their broad muscular shoulders and slender waists never fail to excite favorable comment and praise. It most generally finds expression from a group of giggling maidens who evince a great curiosity about the cadets' slender waists, either openly remarking

that they are artificial or more specifically assuring themselves, when advantage can be taken of a cadet, by poking the gray bound torso around the middle line, timidly asking him if he wears corsets, a remark that usually serves as an introduction to a harmless flirtation.

The splendid set-up of the cadets is not, however, due to stays, whalebones in the dress coats, Dr. Quack's abdominal bandages, or to any other mechanical appliances. It is the result of a very highly intelligent system of physical training, to which the supple young body of the cadet is submitted for four years. Naturally, little by little his muscles, through exercise, attain their proper development, and since no one set of muscles is neglected, the body gradually assumes a well-rounded, finished appearance. The material for instruction is good and healthy, because all of the cadets have been submitted to a rigid physical examination before entrance. They are not, however, all perfect specimens, for many possess minor defects and blemishes, unimportant as far as affecting their military value to the Government, but which can be eradicated by proper physical training.

The instructor of physical training is greatly aided in his actual work, by the kind of life the cadet leads, so that he has not to struggle with a crowd of men who after having received physical training daily, indulge themselves to their heart's content. He has, on the contrary, a set of young men who live under the strictest and simplest conditions in a healthy environment, and whose diet is most wholesome. No late suppers, no beer, no rich food are at work to keep up the rotundity of the stomach, the *coram nobis* of the Romans, or to produce a lot of flabby fat,

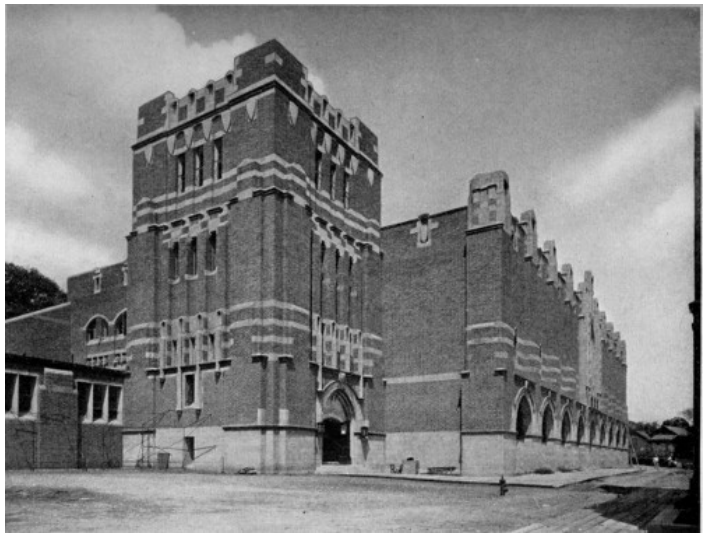
but good cereals, nourishing meats and vegetables, even the despised "slum," are indirect factors in keeping healthy the cadet's body.

West Point believes that for a man to do the best mental work, his body must be in the best condition. The Academy was the first educational institution in the country to recognize that hand in hand with the student's mental training must go the proper development of his physical powers. As long ago as 1817, Captain Partridge, the Superintendent of the Military Academy, incorporated in the curriculum bodily exercises. Since that time the importance of physical training in the cadet's course has been given recognition, but frankly there was no real system of physical training until 1846. A gymnasium was then prepared and instruction given by First Lieut. H. C. Wayne, First Artillery. This was a beginning, but the authorities were hampered by lack of equipment, and also by no very great knowledge of how to proceed. The science of physical training was in its infancy, it must be remembered, but crude as was the instruction it was the genesis of the splendid course that now exists.

For a long period after the Civil War, 1865-1882, cadets attended the gymnasium as they saw fit, a system that was no system. The original course from which the present course has developed was inaugurated in February, 1885.

The daily routine at the Academy is extremely exacting and hard, and I doubt very much if a large number of men could stand the strain and daily grind of the Academic year, if they were not physically prepared to meet its requirements. Since all Academic duties are suspended during part of June,

July, and August, in order to devote these months to practical military instruction, the new cadets are directed to report in June. Two months are then at the disposal of the authorities to strengthen the new arrivals' bodies, both by prescribed physical exercises and by the exercise incident to the drills and maneuvers, before the studies begin in September.



The Exterior of the Gymnasium

During the first three weeks of the new cadet's training, setting-up exercises begin his day's work. After his breakfast has had time to digest, he and his fellows are marched over to the main room of the gymnasium for forty-five minutes' physical drill. Although the setting-up exercises may be given outdoors, and have always been heretofore, the gymnasium is now used to eliminate the distraction of the cadet's attention by passersby whose amusement at the efforts of the stiff and awkward "beasts" reacted upon the new cadets.

The recruit instruction begins with the most simple exercises. The cadet is taught first the position of attention; that his heels must be together, his feet

turned out just so much, his knees devoid of stiffness, in a word, what he shall do with his hips, arms, and hands, keeping his head erect, his chin drawn in, and his eyes straight to the front. Simple as is the position of attention, many men take a long time to learn it. Some never can comply with all the requirements, for how can the bow-legged man and the knock-kneed chap keep their legs "straight without stiffness"?

Then follow breathing exercises to increase the wind capacity, to permit longer and more extended drills, and to lead up to the simple movements designed to develop the muscles upon which the position of attention is dependent.

The cadets line up on the gymnasium floor. The instructor commands: "Count off!"

"One—two—three—four!" "One—two—three—four!" in weak voices and strong voices, diminuendo and crescendo, is repeated all down the line, each man snapping his head to the front as he calls his number. The inequality of tone of voice is gradually eliminated so that after a few drills the count off is uniform in pitch.

"Take distance. March!" commands the drill master followed by "Company, halt!" when the men have become sufficiently separated to perform the exercises without interfering with one another.

Various exercises are then taught, the simple ones first, followed by the more complex movements to develop a coördination of all muscles and a feeling of control over one's body. The set of exercises used at the Academy are simple in the extreme and executed

by even simpler commands. It is astonishing how in a few minutes a perfectly green squad can be taught to execute movements not only in unison, but even with precision and smartness. The great value of the commands lies in the fact that no elaborate explanations are necessary. All the recruit has to do is to watch the instructor. Let me illustrate by an example. The instructor commands:

“1. Arms forward. 2. Raise.”

The cadet raises his arm in front of him to height of shoulders, holding them in this position while the instructor says:

“Swing arms down at 1 and up at 2. Ready! exercise! One! Two! ... One! Halt!”

All movements cease with arms in raised position.

“Arms down.” All drop their arms smartly.

Of course, to the simple movements are added various combinations, and all exercises are executed both at a halt and while marching. The walking with measured step gives poise and grace of carriage. The recruits are also practiced in the run and double time, the latter a military step to gain ground rapidly, but with a minimum inroad upon the wind and endurance of the soldier. Setting-up exercises are the most valuable preliminary training for any body of men entering the military service. For the first week the body is sore and aches to the point of great fatigue, but after the preliminary soreness disappears, a feeling of control supplants it, and the general health of the body is better. No brown pills are necessary; no headaches from biliousness exist. A

good forty-five minute setting-up drill every morning, plenty of wholesome food, and eight hours' sleep contribute to the cadet's good health. The Mess Hall, not to be outdone by other departments, lends its aid by serving judicious plates of prunes. These preliminary setting-up drills, given during the first few weeks, are discontinued for a short period in camp when the cadets are busy learning other drills.

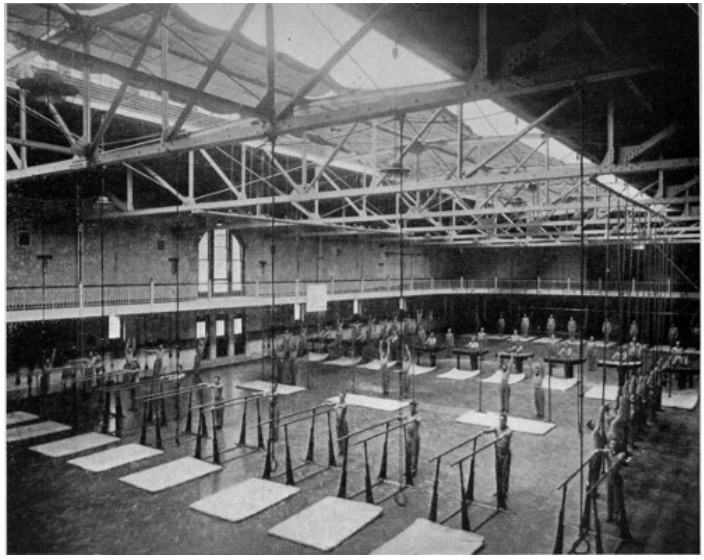
Swimming now replaces the setting-up exercises until the battalions return to barracks in September. The new cadets must be able to swim at least ten minutes without changing their stroke, which standard each cadet must measure before he is excused from attendance at the swimming drills. These drills are never a bore, however, but anticipated with great pleasure by nearly all of the men. Nothing is so refreshing on a hot summer's day, after a tedious drill upon the dusty Plain, than the march over to the "Gym" for a swim in the deliciously cool clean water of the tank. Instruction is also given in resuscitating men who are apparently drowned.

When September comes and the studies are commenced, the Fourth Class resumes its setting-up exercises, to which are added gymnastic work.

In the fall each cadet is given a thorough examination at which all of his measurements are accurately taken, and various strength tests are made. This information is entered on a card and filed for future reference, because later on the cadets are again measured and tested in order that the improvement may be noted.

Measurements are made of the height, chest, waist, arms, legs; and strength tests are made of the arms,

hands, back, and legs. These methods quickly reveal wherein the cadet is deficient, and allow the instructor, like a doctor, to prescribe for each individual the necessary exercises. For example, those whose chests are under-developed are assigned to the chest weights until the deficiency is made up, and where the smaller muscles of the arms and shoulders need attention practice is given with the Indian clubs and medicine balls.



Gymnastic Exercises

To develop in all of them power, vigor, and endurance, the groups of large muscles of the back, chest, abdomen, and legs are improved by setting-up exercises, dumb-bells, and wands, jumping, climbing, and lastly by apparatus work. This class of exercises is reserved until the muscles have been more or less

controlled and respond to the will, for the execution depends not so much upon muscular effort as it does upon agility. It would never do to start in green men on the apparatus work, because there would soon result broken legs and arms. This work is hard enough for those lacking “muscle sense,” even after many months of preliminary exercises.

Included in the schedule for the first year’s work is instruction in the saber and the foils, but as the amount of time that can be devoted to these branches of instruction is limited, only the most elementary features of the arts can be taught. An opportunity, however, is afforded cadets to perfect themselves in the use of both the saber and the foil after regular hours. During the winter months, when the vigorous weather requires a suspension of outdoor drilling, the fencing master gives individual lessons to those who desire to take them. The volunteers are formed into a squad known as the Fencing Squad, from which are organized, for each weapon, class teams. The interests at West Point are so many and varied that it is impossible for each cadet to be an accomplished fencer, boxer, wrestler, gymnast, or swimmer, but each one is given instruction in the fundamentals. The cadets usually select the art that appeals to them most and perfect themselves along the chosen line. The saber is popular, and many cadets acquire great dexterity in its manipulation. It is distinctly a soldierly exercise, so that it exercises a fascination for the men, especially for those who intend to choose the cavalry.

Instruction in the use of the foils is given to the entire class assembled by sections, and consists of preliminary instruction in the single rank without

weapon, in the single rank with foils, and in the double rank with foils. As with the saber, the men whose sport by predilection is fencing with foils take individual lessons from the fencing master every afternoon from November until March. The interest in fencing at one time was exceedingly great, and the sport was regarded as one of the major activities of cadet life. This interest was due to the participation of cadet teams in the Intercollegiate Fencing Meet, but five years ago the Academy authorities prohibited cadet teams from attending these competitions. This action killed the interest in fencing for several years, but at present the former popularity of this excellent sport is returning, and a visitor may now see the thirteen double mats, accommodating fifty-two men, constantly filled.

When President Roosevelt, in 1905, ordered that all cadets should attend gymnasium daily, assistants were detailed to assist the officer in charge of physical training. For the fencing, the Academy secured the services of a *maître d'armes* under whose careful and scientific training, the fencing teams of the Academy continued their brilliant achievements begun in 1902. Beginning with that year until 1910, West Point sent to the annual intercollegiate championship meets, teams that contested with Harvard, Yale, Cornell, Pennsylvania, Columbia, and the Navy. Out of the nine meets, West Point won six, and obtained second place in the other three, yielding their supremacy to their great rivals, the Navy. This remarkable record was accomplished by the untiring efforts of the team and of their much-liked instructor, M. Vauthier, whose skill excited their admiration and inspired in them a splendid spirit of emulation.

More attention is now paid to the bayonet fencing due to the extended use of that weapon in the present European War, but as with the other arts, the limited time permits the teaching of only the fundamentals. The cadet learns enough in each branch to build upon afterwards and make himself a competent instructor.

Not less popular than the fencing are the boxing and wrestling exercises. The first year men are assembled in classes and given instruction in boxing in the guard, footwork, parries, simple direct leads and counters. Similarly in wrestling, the simple holds, resultant falls, and the breaks for the simple holds are all taught.

It is not, however, to the regular class work that one must go to judge of the grip that these manly sports have upon the cadets. In the afternoon, after recitations, embryo Jeffries and Fitzsimmonses gather in the boxing room to receive the holy instruction from the master, Mr. Jenkins, or "Tom," as he is affectionately called among themselves. There he teaches the aspirant pugilist how to land a blow and how to avoid one, and occasionally to make the lesson more realistic he treats his young charge to the experience of receiving one. Some experiences in a man's life grow dim, but never this one.

When the preliminary bouts are being fought, large numbers flock to the boxing room to cheer for the weaker fellow even though he be of another class than one's own. Boxing develops fine qualities among the men. It teaches them to give and take, to receive punishment without flinching, and to respect the skill of a good opponent. Besides it gives a man

confidence in his powers, making him think quickly and move quickly, all excellent qualities for an officer of the army.

Boxing, however, shares the popular appeal with wrestling. This manly sport that we have inherited from our ancestors of the stone age fascinates men chiefly by virtue of its brute strength and to a lesser degree by its skill. It is a game for men of all sizes, provided they possess the necessary qualities of courage and strength.

The boxing room on winter afternoons presents a warm and pleasing contrast to the cold and snow outside. The mats are covered with agile forms in black jersey tights wriggling and squirming, the perspiration rolling off the wrestlers as they endeavor to grind the shoulders of their opponents to the mat. All men receive instruction in wrestling in class, but like the other sports, its devotees must repair for extra instruction to Mr. Jenkins during recreation hours. It is in this time that men practice for their class teams, one for each of the following weights: unlimited, heavy, light heavy, middle, welter, light, and feather. The four class teams meet each other successively to wrestle for the class championship. There is besides a contest for the individual championship, the final bouts which take place publicly at the Annual Indoor Meet.

Prior to the resumption of the afternoon military drills in March, the cadets hold their annual gymnastic event called the Indoor Meet. The contests, which are held with great ceremony in the Gymnasium, include races, pole climbing, work on horizontal bars and parallel bars, long and short horse, rings both stationary and flying, and the tug of

war between the classes.

Each class enters so many men for each event, and for the awards of first, second, or third, the contestant receives a designated number of points. The class receiving the greatest total wins the meet. This athletic event is a very fitting way to end the winter course, for it offers an opportunity to those men who have labored faithfully during the winter afternoons to reap the reward of their efforts. It also is an incentive for better work because of the spirit of competition. The Athletic Association upon this occasion, presents sabers, both to the captain of the football team and to that member of the First Class who during his cadet career has done the most for athletics. It is a very proud night for these young men as they walk forward to receive the coveted saber, the first part of their officer's equipment.

There is great rivalry among the classes during the events. The four corners of the room are filled with the members of each class, who yell like demons to encourage their representatives. Almost every minute the air is filled with shrieks and yells of excited cadets whose "Zis-boom-ahs!" "Rah! Rah! Rahs!" "1917! 1918!!..." are hurled at one another to the delight and amusement of the spectators, young and old, hanging over the iron railing of the gallery.

The courses in gymnastics, wrestling, and boxing, increase in difficulty according to the class, so that the Third and Second Classmen pursue a more advanced course than the plebes. When, however, the cadets become First Classmen, emphasis is laid upon the theories of physical training with the object of preparing these "near officers" for their duties as instructors in the service. The needs of the Army are

carefully considered in the training of the last year in order to send out from West Point men who can at once take hold of a group of recruits and whip them into good physical shape, according to the most intelligent methods.

Unfortunately, the setting-up exercises in the Army are only spasmodically taught. There is very little uniformity in the method, despite the excellent manual with which the troops are provided.

West Point is at present making an effort to influence the Service to a better appreciation of the results to be derived from regular drill in setting-up exercises. To this end, the First Classmen are taught to act as instructors, and are grounded not only in actual practice but in theory. Every year extra classes are held to develop good instructors for the coming summer camps, and for future service in the Army. It is to be hoped that commanding officers will make good use of these enthusiastic young teachers.

Although the control of athletics at the Academy is not under the gymnasium authorities, still it is fitting to speak of the sports in this chapter. The Academy has its football, baseball, basketball, and hockey teams, and in addition the cadets play golf, polo, and tennis. There is little in the training or conduct of these teams that differs from other educational institutions, except the question of time allowed for preparation. It has always been the rule at West Point that no inroads shall be permitted upon the Academic course to aid the development of any athletic team. Consequently, what practice the teams get must be during recreation hours. The only concessions made are supper a half-hour later for the football men, and exemptions twice a week from

parade for the baseball men. Athletics receive, however, the greatest support and encouragement from the authorities, whose aim is, however, not to develop a few good men or an excellent team in any one sport, but to seek a good average.

Every cadet is urged to join in some form of athletics instead of remaining in his dress coat along the side lines as an interested spectator. The efforts made in this direction have received a warm response from the cadet body, so that during recreation hours the Plain presents a busy scene of cadet activities. The green parade ground is dotted with the golfers in gray shirts and white trousers; the tennis courts are filled with animated figures; groups of happy cadets ride by on horseback for a gallop in the woods, while others prefer the more sedate hiking in the surrounding hills. It is a great temptation after the recitations and drills to be lazy, hang around one's room, or "bone fiction" which means reading novels, but in recent years the men have become more and more sensible of the many advantages offered them during their cadet days, and a new spirit of *carpe diem* has come over the Corps.

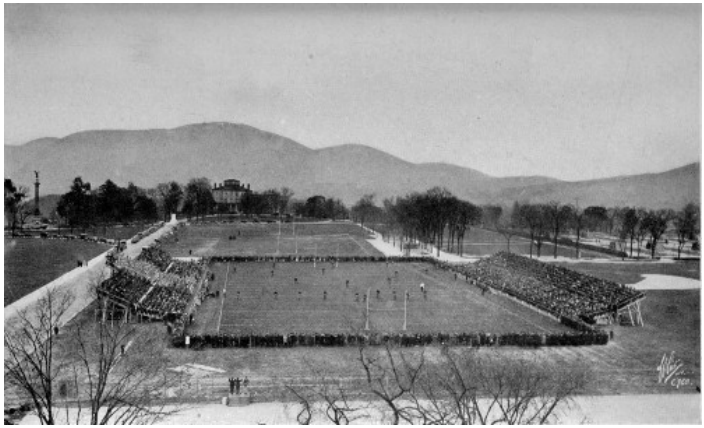


Photo by White

The Athletic Field

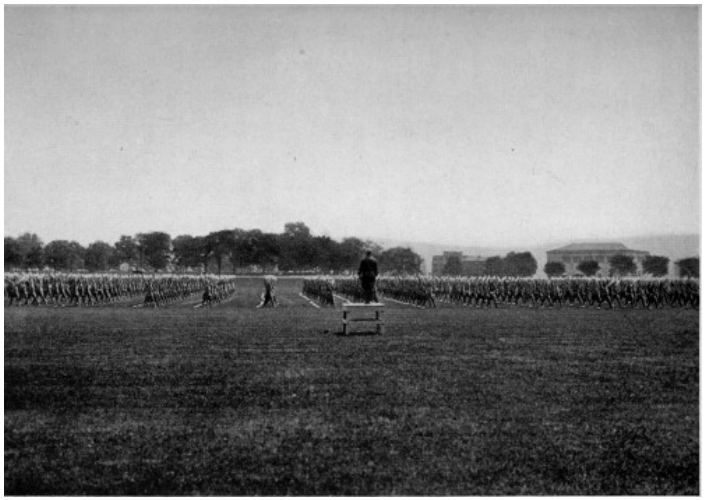
But to return to my subject of physical training proper. No opportunity is lost to impress upon each man the practical use to which he will put his knowledge of physical training when he becomes an officer. He is urged to prepare himself to the best of his ability to become a proficient instructor for the enlisted men whom he will later command. In this connection, the cadets learn in their course of Military Hygiene that the object of all physical training is to develop the human body in its entirety in order that there shall result a perfect equilibrium between all its functions. Many recruits join the Army without the slightest coördination of their body. Although well formed they are awkward, clumsy, stoop shouldered, without ability to make their different members act in unison with their minds. If an officer does not know what to do with these men he will never succeed in getting good work out of them. His first duty therefore is to develop the recruit's body, especially the functions of control, the coördination between eye and hand,

because the success of line troops is largely dependent upon physical aptitude. The modern war makes greater demands than ever upon the soldier's physique. I heard an observer, recently returned from the European War, state that the infantryman is now so loaded down with packs, steel helmets, hand grenades, and rifle that he finds it difficult to advance faster than a walk. The strain upon the physique of the infantryman carrying his pack is greater than upon soldiers of other arms, and since graduates in time of war will be concerned largely with the training of infantry, it is of paramount importance that cadets should understand the building up and care of the bodies of their men. A soldier must possess more than the average muscular strength, endurance, and organic vigor.

I see before me daily the fine results of the system of physical training at the Academy. Ungainly plebes gradually assume a well-rounded appearance, an erect carriage with head up and an elastic walk. I sometimes have to rub my eyes when I behold a cadet whom I once remembered as an unformed plebe, as loose jointed as a big Newfoundland puppy, but who now appears before my astonished vision as a smart soldierly First Classman. When the cadets have completed their four years course they have a decided physical stamp, showing that each one has been trained by the same system.

At the end of the year in June, when the Post is thronged with visitors, relatives, and friends of cadets who are present for the graduation exercises, an outdoor demonstration of the setting-up exercises is given on the Plain. The precision and uniformity with which the movements are executed arouse great interest as eight hundred supple young bodies

respond as one to the sonorous commands of the instructor perched on a solid wooden table.



Setting up Drill on the Plain

This drill is usually followed by the Outdoor Meet, the annual athletic event corresponding to the Indoor Meet. Each class has its best representatives entered to win a victory in the dashes, hurdle races, long distance races, hammer throwing, jumping, and pole vaulting. Back of the roped lines surge the cadets of the various classes, cheering themselves hoarse for their own representatives. Mothers, sisters, sweethearts, friends, friends' friends, in the fluffiest and gayest summer dresses devouringly trail their "Kaydet," and give excited and exaggerated opinions about things of which they are totally ignorant,—but bless their hearts! their presence is an inspiration to the young gods at their Olympian games.

On the June morning of the Outdoor Meet, West Point usually offers one of her incomparably beautiful days as a fitting setting for the display of her cadets' physical prowess. And when the Meet ends, the cadets all feel that one more year's progress been made in their physical development. The First Classmen who on the morrow will go forth into the Army, leaving the protecting walls of West Point, reflect with emotion and gratitude upon all that West Point's training has done to strengthen their bodies to endure whatever hardships that might arise in their new lives as officers.

CHAPTER IX
LESSONS FROM MARS

In the Area of the South Barracks, directly opposite the sally-port, is a little brick building with a clock tower. It is small and insignificant looking to the ordinary observer, but not so to the cadet. Here dwell the "Tacs," the officers of the Tactical Department, who are charged with the discipline and purely military instruction of the Corps. More especially, it is the Headquarters of the Commandant, his assistants, the cadet Officer of the Day, the officers of the guard, and the orderlies. The mail, the precious mail, is assorted twice daily within its old walls, and its creaky wooden floor is worn thin by the lively tread of hurrying cadets feverishly crowding around the bulletin boards.

In the second-floor room of the Tower is the Officer in Charge, the monarch of all he surveys. True, his reign is but twenty-four hours, but he returns to the throne about once a week. During his tour he is the Corps monitor. From the quaint little porch off his room, the "poop deck," as the cadets think of it, he coldly and inscrutably regards all formations in the Area. When the punishment squad is walking tours, the door of the "poop deck" opens unobtrusively, and for a moment he stands casting a glance over the oscillating gray figures, walking their narrow paths back and forth. As quietly as he comes forth he fades from view. The "Area Birds" breathe more freely as he disappears, but soon again he reappears like an accusing conscience. His presence hovers over the daily life of the cadets. To them he is the "O. C." and source of all information. His decisions have the sacredness and authority of the Delphian oracle. If the weather is threatening, it is he who decides whether raincoats shall be worn to meals. If visitors arrive during study hours, his permission must be obtained to speak with them for half an hour. If knotty problems of interior administration bother the Officer of the Day, his advice is immediately sought. He is amazingly omniscient.

Each day brings a new "O. C." until the roster of the Tactical officers has been exhausted, whereupon the cycle begins anew. There are various species of "O. C.'s," and it is astonishing how the personality of each one will influence the day of the cadet. There is the cheerful "O. C." with a kind manner and a cordial tone in his voice. Between him and his young charges there seems to be a bond of mutual confidence and affection. They feel that his reserve is assumed "By order," and that if they only knew him,

he would be their friend. They feel his human side, his understanding of their difficulties, and they have no resentment when he reports them because they know that in doing so, he feels a sympathetic pang. When he enters the Mess Hall, his presence is welcomed, as much as cadets can welcome the presence of any officer. Somehow the laughter seems gayer and the day altogether brighter during his tour. There is no unconscious load to carry in addition to the actual burdens of the day. At parade, a little more effort is made to execute smartly the manual when he gives the commands.

Then there is the gloomy "O. C.," the stand-off kind that looks daggers upon the approach of any cadet. He appears to circle over the Corps like some hungry bird ready to pounce any moment upon his prey. When he has occasion to question a cadet, a barrier of ice immediately rises between them and their viewpoints drift miles and miles apart. He seems to them never to have been a young man himself, so little of the power of understanding does he possess. They look him up in the Army Register and discover that he too was a cadet not so many years ago, but to believe it strains their credulity to the breaking point. When things go wrong, instead of pointing out the error in a natural manner, there are anger and resentment in the voice. All of his "skins" seem flavored with malice. Apparently, he goes out of his way to be disagreeable, as if to be so was to be military. His tour is regarded with dread especially by the First Classmen detailed that day for guard.

But the influence of either type of Officer in Charge is transient. It passeth from day to day. If the Gloomy One is on duty, there is the consolation that the Cheerful One will succeed him like sunshine after

rain. It is the Commandant of Cadets, the chief of all the "Tacs," who exercises the great permanent influence over the Corps. Ever since the creation of his office in 1825, he has been "the Com" to the embryo officers under him. He prescribes all of their drills and casts the mold for the discipline of their bodies and souls. He is the tribunal that grants or withholds their privileges and that punishes them for their premeditated or thoughtless misdeeds. Whereas a few years ago he exercised his power for the seclusion of his office, at a distance from the cadets, today he meets and talks with them daily, ascertains their viewpoint, giving to his work the new spirit of the personal touch that has crept into the instruction at West Point. To be successful in his important work, he must never look bored. He must take an interest in the cadets rather than in the Regulations. He must be human. To gain the admiration of his men he must be above all efficient, fairly good to look upon, military in appearance, and well dressed, and to gain their liking and respect he must be smart, strict, and impartial. There are two faults in an officer that a cadet finds hard to forgive: lack of neatness and "being wooden."

In his work, the Commandant is assisted by the "Tacs," Infantry, Cavalry, Field, and Coast Artillery officers. Officers of every branch of the Service are represented because at West Point, the duties of all arms are taught. It is with these officers more than any others that the cadet comes into the most direct contact.

For purposes of administration, each company is commanded by a Tactical officer. He passes upon all permits, requests, requisitions for clothing and for ordnance. He inspects the rooms of his command to

see that they are clean and in order. He examines the rifles and equipment for dirt and rust. He supervises one or more of the drills. He is really the presiding genius over the company, in whose welfare he takes unselfish interest. It is the duty of him and his brother "Tacs" to uphold the discipline of the Corps, which means that when a man has to deal with eight hundred young wills, American nurtured, he must utilize something stronger than mere words to see that the eight hundred conform to the set standards of the institution. His chief weapon to emphasize to the cadet the importance of the Regulations is the report or "skin," which carries with it a certain number of demerits, and sometimes punishment tours.

The cadet consequently looks upon the "Tac" as his arch enemy. One cannot help having a little resentment toward a person who is always present to check up his misdoings, no matter how just and well deserved the punishment may be. The feeling is only human and the military atmosphere rather augments it. It is especially difficult, I think, for Americans to feel continually the heavy hand of authority, because each one of us is so individualistic. Unconsciously, the cadet cannot get away from the presence of the "Tac." Life in barracks seems to revolve around this individual. From the early morning inspection, until the evening study period when he again comes around, knocking sharply on each door and interrupting the train of thought, his spectre, if not himself, is haunting the surroundings. The cadets know that he is just across the way in the Guard House, and that they will meet him at drill in the afternoon. He is the important factor that must be considered in their daily comings and goings. He is a

sort of irritating yoke.

It is not to be wondered at then, that he is the subject of unlimited discussion, despite regulations to the contrary, and that every peculiarity of manner, dress, or speech is noticed and criticized. His entire personality is usually summed up in some nickname that comes like an inspiration and hits the nail upon the head. Occasionally the name is complimentary, in unconscious recognition of an innate nobility which marks him out as of finer clay, but more often it is uncomplimentary and droll.

Nothing pleases a cadet quite so much as to see a "Tac" do something wooden. They say that he is gross, which has nothing whatsoever to do with being fat, but simply means that his mind is somewhat dense. Immediately the blunder spreads like wild-fire from lip to lip, growing as it goes and repeated with a joy that approaches delirium. There was at one time an officer on duty whose idiosyncrasies were told and retold. He furnished many a good story for the delight of the Corps, and his departure threatened the existence of *The Howitzer*, the cadets' annual publication, and of the *Hundredth Night*, the annual play in which the officers may be satirized. His mind seemed to work by rule and regulation. One night when he was making his inspection of barracks, he came to a room where only one cadet was studying at the center table. He entered, looked around, and then inquired:

"Cadet, where is your roommate?"

"In bed, sir!" was the reply.

"Is he asleep?" asked the officer.

“I don’t know, sir,” answered the cadet.

“Well, find out,” ordered the “Tac.”

The man then turned to his roommate who was plainly visible in bed, and asked:

“Jim, are you asleep?”

“Yes” sounded off a voice from the depths of the comforters.

“He says he’s asleep, sir.”

“Very good, cadet,” replied the “Tac,” and quite satisfied, left the room, just in time to escape the outburst of laughter that followed this highly intellectual conversation.

To be always under the observation of so many pairs of keen young critical eyes is sufficient to make any officer somewhat self-conscious, and to give a certain kink and twist to his actions. The cadets, like all youth, are merciless in their judgment, sometimes almost cruel. They are ever on the alert for any slip that the “Tac” may make and intolerantly condemn him. But so responsive are the cadets that it would take but a smile, or a word or so bordering on intimacy, to remove all critical feelings and bring about “glad confident morning.” I wonder sometimes why that so seldom happens. I suppose it is because we are all artificial.

Although the Tactical officer is very much occupied with the interior discipline and economy of his company, the greater portion of his time is given over to the military instruction of the cadets. The purpose of this instruction is to familiarize the cadet

with the duties and needs of a private in the ranks by practical experience, to impress upon his character the habit of obedience, and to train him in the function of command by repeated exercise.

In order best to accomplish this purpose, the cadets are organized into two battalions of four companies each. This is the present organization, but as soon as the Corps has been increased to the full strength recently organized by Congress, the Commandant intends to make a regiment. Although the Tactical officers command the companies in the sense that they are the supervisors of the discipline and administration, the actual commanding of the companies on the drill ground is entrusted to the cadets. Selected men perform all of the duties of the officers and non-commissioned officers. They are chosen for this honor on account of their good conduct and studious habits, and the soldier-like performance of their duties. They are as strict and conscientious in upholding the Regulations as are the officers themselves. As a matter of truth they are more severe because they seldom take it upon themselves to put any interpretation upon the motive underlying the act. A thing is right or it is wrong. There is no middle line. Whenever any cadet is on duty, he insists that all under him obey implicitly his orders, and should any man be so rash as to disregard his authority, he instantly enters a report against the offender. It would seem that such an action would arouse the resentment of his fellow cadets, but this does not occur, due to the honor system at West Point. Cadets generally recognize that their attitude toward their work must be different from the student at the average educational institution because their duties are all in serious

preparation for their future careers.

Of course, there are some men who carry their authority too far when they find themselves in command of their fellows. Sometimes they lack judgment and consequently deserve sympathy; sometimes there are a few men who deliberately try to make an impression upon their superiors at the expense of the men in the ranks. These men who allow their desire for probable advancement to lead them astray are quickly sized up by the Corps, and dubbed “quilloids.” They are usually disliked and made to feel the displeasure of their comrades. In nearly every class there are some of these men who do not see clearly, and who persist, throughout their whole course, in placing false values upon trivialities.

Since the cadets are organized into Infantry battalions, the greatest amount of time is devoted to the work of this arm. There are many reasons why this should be so. The Infantry is the largest branch of the Army, and to it is assigned the greatest percentage of graduates. Infantry drill is the basis of all drills and is the best for inculcating discipline and cohesion among the men. Besides, the Great War in Europe has proven that Infantry is still the Queen of Battle, and that all of the other branches, the Artillery, the Cavalry, the Engineers, the Aviation Corps are but her minions. It is the Infantry that decides the fight.

The practical military instruction of the cadets, although carried on throughout the year, varies in intensity at different periods. In the depth of winter it is impossible to drill out of doors. The Infantry instruction is then suspended, except for the daily

class and meal formations. When, however, March 15th rolls around, the Ides of March remember, and the snow leaves the ground, the Corps begins its annual training. Immediately after the dismissal of the sections from recitations at four o'clock, the battalions form in front of barracks for the afternoon drill. Despite the raw March winds that blow across the Plain, chilling one to the marrow, the battalion designated for Infantry drill sets about overcoming the inequalities of marching, the lack of precision in the execution of the manual, raggedness of the movements that have been produced by the long inactivity of the winter. It is at this period that the most scrupulous attention must be paid to the manner of executing the various movements. Every little dereliction is criticized, every mistake is corrected, and every movement repeated until it can be faultlessly performed.

First the companies are drilled alone and then later assembled for a short battalion drill before going back to barracks. Up and down the Plain the companies march, now in column, now in line. The right guides of each company seem to be carrying the burden of the drill as with tense faces they fixedly regard the two points upon which they are directing the march of the company. Meanwhile they are measuring their step by a silent count of "one-two-three-four." The officers and file closers are attentive and alert, giving a word of caution here and one of reprimand there, as the line crowds in on the left, or, like an accordion, opens out on the right. The plebes in the rear rank are striving to the utmost to keep in step and on the line, and at the same time carry their rifles straight and drag in their chins. The detail and care with which every command must be

executed begins to produce a feeling of monotony, and stolen glances seek the clock in the tower. Fifteen more minutes! The hour seems interminable and the wind more and more disagreeable. Finally the hands of the clock roll around to five and the musician appears in the sally-port and sounds the recall.

The next afternoon the second battalion attends close order drill and the first takes its place at extended order. A lighter gayer crowd march forth to this exercise. Here they will have a little chance for individual leadership, the command of a platoon perhaps, or of a squad, or they will enjoy the comparative freedom and independence of the skirmisher. In the early part of the spring course the mechanism of the drill must be rehearsed upon the Plain. The parade ground is therefore dotted with prone and kneeling groups of platoon columns and of squad columns. The blast of the officer's whistle, the simultaneous outstretching of the squad and platoon leaders' arms as a signal, and the columns magically deploy into one long line of skirmishers. Once again the blast of the whistle sounds; more signals; bayonets are fixed and squads begin their rushes forward to the delight of the small boys and visitors who line the surrounding walks. Then follows the assembly and the companies do it all over again.

As soon as the mechanism is well learned, the battalion is taken up into the hills and maneuvered over all sorts of ground. Combat problems involving advance guard and outposts are worked out under the direction of the Tactical officer. In these exercises the actual command of the companies is in the hands of the cadets, but the Tactical officer, assisted by other officers, directs the drill. The cadets detailed

for this drill called Field Training are assembled in front of the old gymnasium where the officer outlines the problem and gives the men a talk on the principles that are involved. Each man is made to understand just what he must do before he starts out and must know the general principles to be applied in cases that arise. A situation is assumed where the cadets are a force in the country of the enemy. They are to form, we will say, the advance guard of their regiment. The instructor gives to the cadets who are to command all information that he has of his own forces and of those of the enemy and he points out to the young commanders what is to be accomplished. The cadet officers are then called upon to communicate to the men under them the instructions that, in their opinion, are necessary to accomplish the mission. The officer stands near to make suggestions and corrections, or to point out errors of judgment. As soon as all understand what they are to do the command moves out to work out the problem.

It is in the Field Training of the Infantry that the cadet acquires a real knowledge of command. He must be able to size up situations and quickly form a decision. He must then issue orders, clear and definite, to cover the case. It is in these drills that he learns something of the art of handling troops and what is the feeling of responsibility. The cadets who actually exercise command are the First Classmen. They are detailed by roster, irrespective of whether they are privates or cadet officers, so that every man has many opportunities to command a company before he graduates. It is highly important that the cadet should be given practice in appearing before a body of men and in giving them instructions. Nothing helps so much to give him confidence in

himself. It is of great value to him when he joins his regiment in the Service. Cadets of the First Class are therefore detailed for every kind of duty. They are company commanders, acting adjutants, lieutenants, officers of the day and of the guard. Whenever there is a chance to place responsibility upon the cadet, advantage is taken of it by the Commandant.

The Infantry instruction is progressive. The First Classmen are trained in more advanced work by means of tactical walks. These exercises are similar to those prescribed for officers in the Service and are in line with their future work as subalterns. An officer takes four or five men with him to some neighboring terrain well adapted to a particular problem. All of the different phases of the problem are considered and the cadets required to size up each situation and issue their orders as if in actual warfare. They are provided with maps which they must be able to read with facility. At the close of the exercise the officer holds a critique.

Nor is target practice, that important branch of Infantry instruction, neglected. In summer when the cadets are in camp, the complete course of firing as prescribed for Infantry and Cavalry troops is given the First Class. It is held down on the flats near the river in the shelter of Cro's Nest where a fair range parallels the Hudson. Every clear morning at seven the detachments march down to the range. At this hour the air is cool and crisp and so crystalline that every feature of the landscape stands out sharply defined. West Point is incomparably beautiful at this season and time of the day. But as the sun mounts higher in the Heavens the coolness is replaced by a steadily increasing heat. From the arrival at the range until noon, Washington Valley echoes with the

crack! crack! of the Springfields. Little groups of cadets are stretched out in the blazing sun trying to find the bull's eye and hoping to pile up a big enough score to win the coveted medal of Expert Rifleman or Sharpshooter. Meanwhile another portion of the men is down behind the butts, taking its turn in shifting the targets. All morning long they monotonously pull the frames up and down, pasting on the target, now a white paster, now a black one, or mechanically waving the red flag back and forth. Intermittently the telephone rings: "Ting-a-ling-a-ling-a-ling."

"Re-mark No. 8!" sings out the operator.

Careful search is made on No. 8 for the third time and up goes the red flag, the sight of which fills the hopeful cadet back at the firing point with a feeling of disappointment and disgust. And so the morning passes, the men firing so interested that they are oblivious of its flight, and the men in the butts thinking less of pasters and red flags than of the cool shower that waits them in camp, and blessed dinner.

If one wishes, however, to see the finished results of the discipline and cohesion produced by Infantry training he must attend either a review and inspection by the Corps, or a parade.

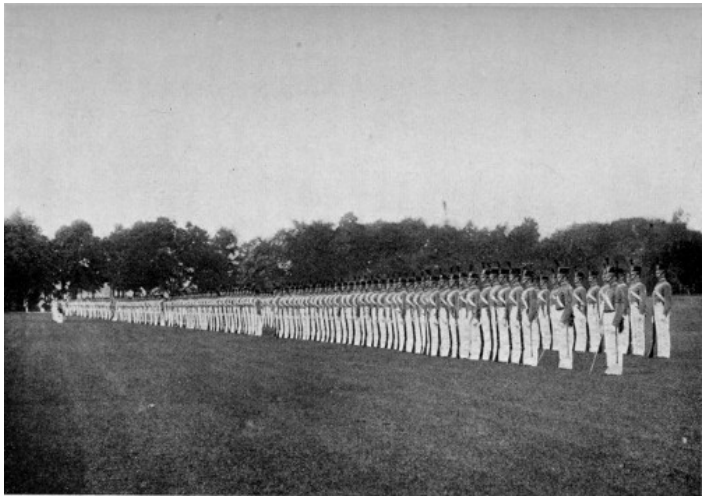
Every Saturday, shortly after the return of the cadets from dinner, there is an inspection on the Plain, preceded by a review, at which the appearance, clothing, and equipment of the cadet are minutely examined by his Tactical officer. I know of no finer sight at West Point than this ceremony, especially in the summer and early fall when the Plain is green and the cadets wear the excellent combination of the

gray coats and white trousers. As the companies maneuver on the Plain preparatory to taking their places on the line, the perfection of their marching, their impeccable appearance, the white cross-belts, the glittering breastplates, and bell buttons of coat, the foreign-looking dress hat with its rigid little pompon, the splendid bearing of the men, betray the beholder into believing that he is watching the evolutions of some legendary *corps d'élite*. The scene seems foreign and yet again very American. The most characteristic feature is the thoroughness with which every detail of dress, equipment, and marching has been worked out. When the Corps turns the bend near Sedgwick monument and comes swinging down past the reviewing officer, the most callous spectator could not fail to have his emotions stirred. His pride is flattered. He is watching a ceremony whose perfection of execution and beauty is symbolic of an institution that in a sense belongs to him, to the man next to him, and to all the spectators along the line. It is the product of America. No wonder he reverently removes his hat as the colors march by.

No less beautiful although not so elaborate is the ceremony of parade. During the spring and fall, daily parades are given by the battalion that has attended infantry drill on that day. The drummers sound the first call in the sally-port. The Area of Barracks is practically deserted, but within the rooms cadets are feverishly adjusting their belts, wiping off their guns, struggling into their coats, or looking for mislaid breastplates. Out of the doors all at once begin to dart the plebes, first one then another, and still others. They hastily proceed to their places on the walk and mark the rear rank. The hands of the clock

slowly creeping around to the hour for the assembly are watched intently by the Officer of the Day who stands in the sally-port ready to give the signal.

From all the doors of the barracks are now pouring the upper-classmen immaculately dressed in stiffly starched and evenly creased white trousers, gleaming white belts, and shining buckles. Their faces are so obscured by the chin strap of their high dress hat that all personalities are lost, and each man appears to be the duplicate of his fellow. The picturesqueness of the uniforms and the background of the severe stone barracks recall the days of Frederick the Great. The assembly sounds. At once the companies are formed and inspected. They proceed to their places in the sally-ports and between the neighboring buildings preparatory to debouching on the Plain. At the termination of the Adjutant's call the band begins its march. One company emerges unexpectedly from the north sally-port, another from the south, another from near the Academic building, still one more from the shadow of the old gymnasium. More of them keep coming and move out on the Plain. The fresh green grass offers a charming contrast to the white of the uniforms as the companies perform their evolutions before advancing to the line. The Plain is dotted with companies in column, companies in line, companies in columns of platoons, marching in perfect cadence as if animated by machinery.



Parade on the Plain

The line is now formed stretching from the flag pole to the trees in front of barracks. A few minutes of silence reign over the parade while the Adjutant moves smartly and rapidly to his place in front of the Battalion, and by command, brings the Corps to "parade rest." The golden sun sinking in the west plays its dying rays on the long gray line, causing the men in ranks to blink and blink on account of its brilliancy, and illuminating the bell buttons of the dress coats until they sparkle like so many gems. Meanwhile, the band has marched in front of the Corps and resumed its place on the right. The retreat sounds. Then a hush falls over the visitors' seats as the spectators rise to do honor to the flag, while the neighboring hills reverberate with the strains of the *Star Spangled Banner*. The exercise in the manual of arms being terminated, the band once again crashes forth and the thin gray line of cadet officers, with their feathered plumes fluttering and the knots of their red ashes swinging back and forth, sweeps

forward to the officer reviewing the parade. Smart salutes are exchanged, the cadet officers face about and return to their companies to march them in review and back to barracks.

Hand in hand with the Infantry instruction goes that of the Cavalry to which is allotted the next greatest amount of time in the schedule of training. Cadets are taught the fundamentals of every branch of the Service, and all cadets receive instruction in riding and in Cavalry tactics whether or not they are destined for that arm. Infantry officers must know how to ride as well as those of the mounted branches. Frequently their duties require them to be mounted, and when they arrive at the grade of field officer, major, and above, they are obliged to command their troops from the back of a horse. It is only during their first year at the Academy that cadets do not attend cavalry instruction. When they become Third Classmen their acquaintance with the horse begins. Cadets must be taught to ride before they can be advanced to the tactics of the cavalry, and as a matter of fact, learning to ride well takes so much of the allotted time that comparatively little is left for the cavalry problems. The cadets who join this branch of the service will learn their cavalry tactics chiefly in the Army.

Beginning with the Yearlings, therefore, lessons are given in equitation, outdoors in good weather and in the magnificent Riding Hall during the winter. At first life in the Riding Hall is hard for those men who have never before ridden, but once they learn the art of “sticking on” they enjoy the exercise that riding affords. The first few weeks are particularly trying. When the Yearlings march in upon the spongy tanbark, they find themselves face to face with a

whole row of bareback horses lined up along one side of the hall. The animals are champing their bits and wagging their heads apparently in sheer joy of the anticipation of “policing” a few victims. Little chills run up and down the spines of the Yearlings and their bodies are covered with goose flesh as they read the challenge in the eyes of the beasts.

“Fall out!” orders the instructor. Ranks are broken and the men run over to the grinning horses, scrutinizing them with breathless impatience, first one, then the other, hoping to catch a sight of a kind and gentle glance.

“1. Prepare to mount! 2. Moun-n-n-n-t!” commands the instructor in a sepulchral voice. Then follow frantic efforts to climb the slippery hides—ineffectual jumps succeeded by sudden descents. Finally they get aboard and all goes well until the heartless instructor intones:

“Slow trot. March-h-h-h-h-h!”

Such efforts at balancing never before were seen! One man on a razorback tries every spot from the mane to the croup in an attempt to find one little piece of hide whereon he might sit in peace and quiet; another on an imitation Percheron wabbles most dangerously and falls off going around the curve; another is firmly grasping the mane, or tugging at the iron mouth of some malicious brute that insists upon holding its head high, with both ears bent back to enjoy the muttered curses of the rider. The galleries are lined with the daily visitors who smile gleefully upon the embryo cavalrymen, but the distressed Yearling’s gaze turns reproachfully toward the spot where the young girls of the Post

may be seen bunched together and giggling.

As the days pass by the Yearling finds that his seat becomes more and more secure and by the time that he has arrived at the dignity of a Second Classman he feels that he is able to cope with the wildest of the equine breed. During the first year the drill was more or less drudgery, but after twelve months of practice he enjoys the lessons. He feels the pleasure that comes from the ability to make one's muscles obey the will, to feel the horse yielding to the slightest touch of leg or rein. The thrill of the leap over the ditch and of the jump over the wall are sensations that he loves. Later on when he goes out to the cavalry drill ground for instruction in tactics, it is the gallop and the charge *en masse* that give a new meaning to the word "drill." It is no longer a task but a pleasure.

His progress in handling his horse enables him to proceed to mounted pistol practice and to enjoy the privilege of riding on the road, and of polo. By the time that he has become a First Classman he is ready to devote his time not so much to equitation as to real Cavalry instruction. He learns how to reconnoiter, how to patrol. As in his Infantry instruction, he must solve problems innumerable: the forming of the advance and rear guards, the establishing of outposts, making and breaking camp, the proper conduct of the march, how to care for his horse the same as though he were an enlisted man. He must groom him, feed him, and water him. He is called upon to perform every duty that is required of enlisted men in the Cavalry so that when he shall become an officer, he will know just how much to expect of his men. He will so understand the fatigue of grooming, the difficulty of managing some horses,

and the impossibility of always being alert and attentive that he will be patient and sympathetic, judging his men by their limited advantages and not by the standard that he has attained through a training *par excellence*.

Portions of the Cavalry instruction are devoted to hippology and to packing. In hippology the cadets study a text-book upon which they recite, but in addition they are frequently taken to the stables where all types of horses are trotted out for their inspection and criticism. They must be able to tell all of the horse's good and bad points and must be conversant with the remedies for the ordinary diseases. The packing is entirely practical. A pack train is kept at West Point for the use of the cadets, and they are drilled in putting up an aparejo and packing the mules. They must be experts in throwing the diamond hitch.

The branch of the Service, however, that is more closely allied to the Infantry than the Cavalry is the Field Artillery. They are indeed brother arms. In the fight the Artillery must prepare the way for the Infantry, using its powerful explosive shells to demoralize and decimate the enemy so that the Infantry's task, hard enough at best, may be made easier. Among the cadets the Field Artillery is a popular branch of the training almost rivaling the Cavalry. The course of instruction is splendidly progressive. During Fourth-Class year, the plebes learn all about the instruments, how to set the sights, to read the scales, the use of the quadrant, and to perform the duties of cannoneer. By the time that they go into their Yearling camp each individual is sufficiently trained to be a good gunner, so that the class is ready to receive instruction both in the squad

acting alone, and as part of a battery. During the fall and drill periods of the Third-Class year, the Yearlings are called upon to perform the duties of driver, sometimes wheel driver and again lead driver. As in the Cavalry instruction, the cadets must learn all of the duties of enlisted men. Their experience as drivers will teach them how hard it is to bring horses and carriage to a stop at a designated place, how difficult it is to estimate the ground correctly, and how a man's patience can be tried by fractious and unruly beasts.

The members of the Second Class are taught in the fall the technique of the mountain battery, and in the spring they act as officers at the drill of the field battery while the First Classmen who have already passed through this stage of the training are detailed to command the organization. The First Classmen also spend a great deal of their time upon the theory of artillery fire, and practice accumulating firing data. During the First-Class camp they conduct regular target practice with the battery.

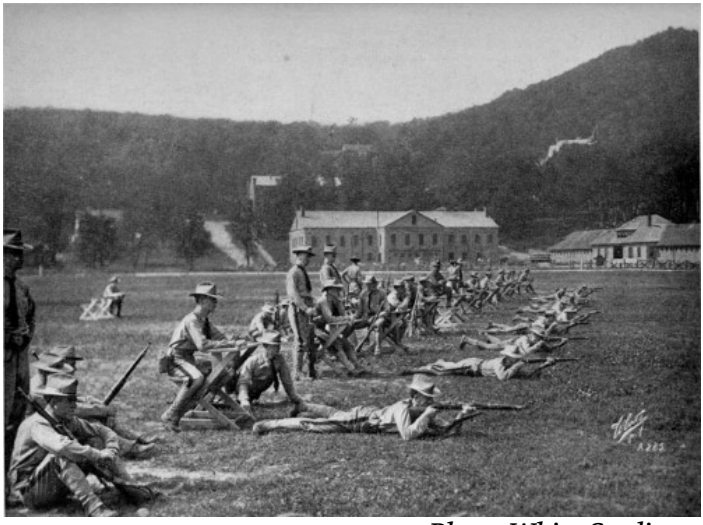


Photo White Studio

At Target Practice on the Flats

The course in Field Artillery has been vastly improved in recent years. All of the instruction is given by Field Artillery officers, and non-commissioned officers who are specialists along certain lines, instead of as in former days by a stray Infantry, Cavalry, or Coast Artillery Tactical officer. All the plebe drill period at that time seemed to be consumed in jumping up on the caisson and off again. I always felt like a squirrel in a cage going round and round without getting anywhere. Sometimes, too, the instructions that the officer gave us were a little mixed to say the least. I remember once an instructor to whom Field Artillery was an alien art giving us at drill the following order much to the merriment of the plebes:

“The cadets will now be divided into three squads: those that have fired, those that have not fired, and

those that have done neither."

There are other drills in the cadet's military calendar besides those of the three main branches of the mobile army. No little attention is given to Practical Military Engineering. In camp one third of the class spends four hours of the day practicing the various methods of signaling, how to make knots and lashes, how to construct gabions and fascines, how to use tackle, and how to construct bridges. The First Class make position and road sketches, they lay out field fortifications, and dig trenches. They learn the use of explosives, the placing of mines, and the dynamiting of trees, buildings, and railroads. During the Academic year the Department of Practical Military Engineering gives the Fourth Class a thorough course in surveying that embraces both theory and practical work with the instruments in the field.

The Tactical Department is charged with the instruction of the Coast Artillery. Several modern batteries, both rifles and mortars, are installed at West Point so that the cadets may have every facility for learning the technique of this arm. The Yearlings act as gunners, performing the same duties that are required of privates in the Regular Army. The Second Classmen act as gun pointers, range and azimuth setters, do the plotting and observing, or, in other words, perform the duties of non-commissioned officers in the Regular Service. The First Classmen act as battery officers or as range officers, so that upon graduation they may join their commands fully acquainted with their prospective duties.

After the Corps has been given the maximum of military training for any one year, a week's practice march is held as a climax to the intensive work of

the summer camp. With band playing and with all the panoply of war the cadets march down to the ferry to cross to the other side of the Hudson. For the next six days they march and maneuver through the beautiful country in the neighborhood of West Point. Every day camp is established at a new point and a problem worked out on the march from one place to the other. All branches of the Service are represented. The main body of the Corps go as Infantry, but the First Class make up the Cavalry and Field Artillery. The “hike” is a valuable experience for the cadets. They learn what it means to be a “doughboy” and carry a pack on one’s back through the sweltering heat and the dust of the road. They appreciate how tired the Cavalryman and the Field Artilleryman are when they throw themselves down in their pup tents after the labors of the day. Their understanding of real soldiering is broadened and their sympathy for the duties that enlisted men have to perform, awakened. They return to the Post, footsore and weary, prepared to take up their studies in barracks and continue their military training in the limited time after recitations.

During the entire year all military instruction ceases at six o’clock in the evening. Military methods are, however, inextricably woven into every part of the cadet life in addition to what might be called purely military training. All during the evening study period, for example, a certain number of cadets are on guard in the hall of the divisions to prevent the cadets from visiting in each other’s rooms, and to preserve the utmost silence in the barracks. The only noise that can be heard is the tread of the sentinel who walks back and forth wrapped in his own thoughts that occasionally are interrupted by the

Corporal of the Guard sticking his head in at the door and saying:

“All right on your post?”

“All right, sir,” answers the sentinel, who as soon as his superior disappears replunges into his reverie until time for his relief.

At twenty minutes past nine a preliminary tapping of the drums is heard on the Plain near the Commandant’s quarters. A few minutes of silence ensue. Then the music of the fifes and drums startles the night as the drum corps commences its march to barracks to sound tattoo. The notes of the fifes float out over the darkened Plain in the weirdest possible manner, as if the spirits of the night were trying to be gay but could not suppress a certain plaintiveness in spite of their joy. They are like a little boy going upstairs in the dark who keeps saying out loud, “I’m not afraid, I’m not afraid.” On they come, the music growing louder and louder, until they reach the sally-port where their racket is a signal to the cadets to cease work and make down their beds. Some of the men are already asleep, but the vast majority are still sitting at tables, supporting their heads on their hands as they try to absorb the meaning of the printed words that dance before their eyes. The Drum Corps has ceased to play and stands near the Guard House waiting for half-past nine. The silence of the Area is broken only by the tramp of the third relief marching around the stoop of barracks from one division to another.



Photo White Studio

At P. M. E. Drill

Building a Pontoon Bridge

"No. 1. Off!" commands the Corporal.

The sentinel joins his leader and passes on to relieve the other sentinels. Meanwhile the hands of the clock indicate nine-thirty. The "Hell Cats" sound the tattoo. For the next half-hour the barracks are animated with cadets running up and down stairs to the showers, with the noise of beds being made down and water drawn. Gradually ten o'clock draws near. The Officer of the Day standing in the Area turns to the musicians:

"Sound taps!" he commands.

THUMP! THUMP! THUMP! goes the drum in measured beat.

"Li-i-i-i-i-ghts out!" call the subdivision inspectors. The windows of the barracks seem to blink for a moment and then darkness envelops all of the rooms.

And so ends the day that has been continually under the eyes of the Tactical Department. The next day will be the same and the next and the next. Next year, too, the mills of the Gods will be grinding away bending, twisting, shaping Mr. Ducrot for his future work. No act of his is passed unnoticed or unrecorded. Every time that he performs a duty the "Tacs" give him a mark that goes toward determining his standing in military efficiency and deportment. This is as it should be because the attitude toward duty that he displays as a cadet is a good indication of his future attitude as an officer, and to deny to merit, talents, and acquirements their just rewards would be to check the emulation which brings genius into action and qualifies the industrious student to become an ornament to his country.

The object of the Tactical Department is to make the cadets loyal, obedient, and disciplined young soldiers. It requires them to perform all of the duties of the enlisted men of the Army as a method of understanding what an officer can demand of his men. They can then go to their regiments with a sympathetic understanding of the trials and thorns in the path of the men for whose lives they are responsible. Moreover the "Tacs" aim to give the cadet a good training in the fundamental principles of the tactics of each arm so that he leaves the Academy prepared to take up the duties of a subaltern. He is not supposed to leave West Point with the knowledge of a colonel as some seem to think.

In our present war with Germany, West Point will continue to send forth her product as heretofore to help train the immense number of recruits for the new Army. They will be called upon to train also the new officers that are needed for the large force that we will raise, and to this task they must bring not only a practical knowledge of certain drills, but a mind capable of thinking straight. They will lend all of the aid that is possible but they realize also that in training officers, drill and mechanical maneuvers, however useful they may be, are subordinate to the more rare and difficult acquirements that alone can produce accomplished and scientific officers. What is chiefly needed in an officer is acuteness of intellect, either the result of genius or habits of reasoning on scientific subjects. To this of course must be added tactical knowledge, the foundation of which is securely laid at West Point.

In the immense army that will soon be ours, the graduates of West Point will indeed be a small leaven, but I am confident they will bring to this mass of raw soldier material the ideals and the spirit of their Alma Mater. They will not forget the lessons learned at her knee, but will justify to the nation that has given them their education the soundness of West Point's methods of training officers.

CHAPTER X
HENCE, LOATHED

MELANCHOLY!

For days and days groups of Army Service Corps men going around the Post clipping the trees, mowing the grass on the Plain, and daubing with black paint the cannon on Trophy Point have been heralding the approach of June. The odors of the fresh grass and of the tar in the gutters are exhilarating smells for every cadet in the Corps. There are buoyancy and hope in their manner and a decided note of anticipation in the air. This feeling of anticipation is the greatest charm of a cadet's life. It really begins with the candidate before he enters the Academy. He anticipates his entrance; then as a plebe, he looks forward with even greater pleasure to the day of his "recognition" when he shall become an upper-classman. Words are too weak to express the eagerness with which, as a Yearling, he sees the spring slip by and June arrive bringing with it his long desired furlough. And then he has before his eyes the seeming El Dorado of graduation.

Our plebe, Mr. Ducrot, is especially on the *qui vive* for the passage of the days. Ever since the snow left the Plain and the surrounding hills, and the first little blades of grass began to peep through the boggy spring earth, his attitude toward life has somehow seemed different. For the past ten months he has led the life of an obscure being, like the silk worm in his cocoon spinning his silk. He has almost completed his work of the plebe year and is about to emerge from his shell. For a few weeks he is seized with the languor of spring. The drills while not irksome seem unduly long; the lessons harder to prepare. But as the days of May fly by he feels his wings growing

stronger and stronger and the spring fever is forgotten in the anticipation of being a Yearling.

At last the first of June arrives! At reveille even, everyone is happy. He tries his best to answer about a dozen upper-classmen who ask him all at once, "Mr. Ducrot, how many days until June?"

"*No* days until June, sir!" he replies in a voice that vibrates with joy. It is hard for Mr. Ducrot to believe that the day that he has so long anticipated is here. It has been so long coming. He cannot be mistaken, however, for all around him are cadets in fresh white trousers, the first time since the previous summer. He knows that for years and years it has been the custom for "the Battalion to go into white" on the first of June, at reveille. Only a few days now remain before he will put aside his humility and meekness and be received by the upper-classmen upon terms of equality.

The great metamorphosis or "recognition," as it is called, occurs upon the day before graduation, immediately after the return of the Battalion from supper, and just prior to the graduation ball. On this night, at supper formation and in the Mess Hall, the upper-classmen are particularly severe. They "brace" and "crawl" the plebes more than ever before, filling the air with, "Get your shoulders back, Mr. Ducrot, more yet! more yet!" or, "Draw in that chin!" On this night, however, the whole affair seems humorous, for the plebes have completed their year and the upper-classmen are now about to extend to them a warm handclasp. In order not to let the plebe training fizzle out or have an inglorious end, the rigor of the "crawling" that for months has diminished little by little is all at once revived with

great earnestness and enthusiasm. No one minds, however, but regards this last evening's treatment more as a "grind," or joke.

After supper the battalions form in front of the Mess Hall and march back to the barracks in the soft June twilight. To the observer at a distance, a roar seems to arise from the ranks as the corporals, sergeants, and lieutenants hurl corrections at the plebes. The noise continues until the Corps wheels into line to listen to the orders of the first captain standing under the trees in front of the barracks consulting with the Officer of the Day. The various instructions and orders having been announced he commands:

"Dismiss your companies!"

At once the upper-classmen in the front ranks turn and cordially grasp the hands of the plebes and slap them on the back, the first time in a year since their arrival at West Point. All of the dreariness of a year's subjection is dissipated by the affectionate and fraternal welcome in the Corps proper by the upper-classmen, whose strong grips are to the plebe a sufficient reward for the hardships of the year just completed. Friendships whose seeds were sown, but prevented from growing by the great gulf between upper-classmen and plebes, now find their fullest opportunity for development. The Rubicon is passed, and our plebe lays aside his sackcloth-and-ashes manner for the more man-of-the-world one of a Yearling. And richly does he deserve this recompense for his manliness and grit! Following Kipling's advice in *If*, he has for a long year (sometimes by *force majeure*) filled "the unforgiving minute with sixty seconds' worth of distance run," so that his "recognition" by his fellow cadets means that he is

stamped approved, and that he is entitled to associate with real men.

Mr. Ducrot is now entitled to enjoy all the privileges allowed the cadets by regulation and by the custom of the Corps. As a plebe, tradition ordains that he shall not attend the hops, or be allowed the social recreations of the upper-classman, but now the bars to the pasture of pleasures are removed and he scampers in like a young colt to enjoy his new freedom.

The two months of camp life that follow graduation give cadets plenty of opportunities to enjoy their spare moments. The entire forenoon is taken up with the various kinds of military instruction, with infantry drill, practical military engineering, target practice, artillery drill, equitation, swimming, and what not, but the afternoon is at their disposal from the return of the Battalion from dinner until parade at five-thirty. They have many diversions from which to choose. Close by the camp are five tennis courts for the devotees of the racquet. Upon the Plain is a good golf course for those who like this sport and speak its unintelligible language. A selected number of the First Class defy the afternoon heat playing polo down on the Flats, while others don their bathing suits and go canoeing upon the river. The less energetic throw their blankets in the shade of the trees near the Y. M. C. A. tent and abandon themselves to a siesta, or to the delights of some good book.

Then, there are the social beings who spend most of their time in the society of girls. They are the "spoonoids" of the Corps. After dinner they flock *en masse* either to the visitors' seats or to the hotel

where mothers, sisters, sweethearts, friends and friends' friends gather around admiringly. It must not be imagined that all "spoonoids" are alike. There are the virulent kind who are never in camp during "release from quarters," who are never seen on the athletic field except in a dress coat. They are always rushing some girl, first one, then another, and are of the genus that are never quite on time for any formation. They come running into camp at the last minute, breathless and excited, and are peevish if everyone doesn't turn in and help them into their belts for parade. Then there is the more moderate "spoonoid," the unobtrusive sort, who, when he goes walking with a girl, dons his comfortable gray shirt and white trousers, and sets forth carrying a few deceptive golf sticks. Lastly, there is the timid kind who sneaks into his dress coat and tries to slip out of camp without being seen by his fellows. He really wants to go out but he is a little ashamed of his desire, and he doesn't want the other chaps to know anything about it. Besides, the chorus of "ahs-s-s-s-s-s!" from all the tents along the line terrify him.

West Point, however, is indebted to these social beings for the touch of romance and glamour that they give to the summer life. Their bright uniforms and the gay dresses of their partners (and the still gayer parasols) are seen everywhere on Flirtation Walk, on the balcony back of Cullum Hall, on the Plain, and chiefly at the visitors' seats, and their youth and enthusiasm add a distinct charm to the social life.

But the real amusements and pleasures of summer camp come after supper. Thrice weekly small hops are held from eight to ten o'clock and on the other three nights open-air concerts are given by the band.

The hops are the most popular and enjoyed of all the pleasures. The Yearlings have an opportunity of showing how much they profited by their dancing lessons of the previous summer and they flock to Cullum Hall in droves. On hop nights the camp is practically deserted. Some few men who do not care for dancing, and another small group who pose as women haters, remain in the limits visiting one another or reading. The new plebes, of course, are in their tents, silently working upon their equipment. Commencing at seven-thirty, however, a stream of upper-classmen begins passing the guard tents, signing out for the hop, bound first for the hotel or for some officers' quarters where charming young partners await them. As soon as darkness falls the couples set forth for the dance. As they emerge out of the obscurity of the Plain into the brilliant light that pours out of the main entrance of the hall they appear for all the world like a lot of summer insects drawn to a bright electric bulb.

It is a charming picture that the cadets in their uniforms and the girls in their pretty dresses make as they gather in Cullum Hall for the dances. It recalls all of the stories of beauty and chivalry that poets have so often idealized. As I watch them today, their youth tempts my imagination and it runs away, but as a matter of truth the reality is not quite so ideal.

The cadets, even the most imaginative, see things more clearly and recognize that some of the girls that come to the hops were not the subject of the poet's thought when he wrote his odes to beauty. There are all sorts of girls. There are young girls, and some not so young; pretty girls and homely ones; vivacious girls and inanimate ones; intelligent girls and dull ones; and occasionally some few attend the dances

who are so little favored with feminine charms that for years the cadets have called them “L. P.’s.” These damsels are usually the friends of friends, or maybe, the friends of friends of friends—very distant as you see, and the poor cadet is called upon to pay off his friend’s social debt. He does it well, too, for the dances are all by card so that every girl has her partners arranged beforehand, and she leaves the ball having experienced the intoxication of a great belle.

The cadets have no little fun over these girls, and if by any chance they know them ahead of time they make an attempt to ensnare one of their classmates, saying:

“Say, Jim, there is a peach of a *femme* coming up for the next dance, will you ‘drag’ her for me?”

He elaborates upon her charms with the deceit of an experienced politician until accommodating Jim accepts.

Most men, however, are wily about these unknown friends’ friends, but occasionally they are caught. I know one cadet who was asked to take such a girl to a hop. He replied that he would not do so himself but that he would find some other cadet. With true Irish persuasiveness and unexampled Blarney he prevailed upon a classmate. When the latter was making out the card of the supposedly beautiful girl (but in reality a true L. P.) his first thought was to offer some dances to the promoter of the young lady. The arch-plotter, however, innocently replied:

“I’m awfully sorry, Joe, but my card is full.”

This answer appeared exceedingly strange to Joe, until he beheld his partner for the dance. Then the base ingratitude of his friend so enraged him that he at once broke off all diplomatic and social relations.

So wary have the cadets become lest they be taken in, that when a fellow cadet comes out into the hall to get one of the stags to dance with a girl, he is at once the object of suspicion. When he asks his friend to take a dance because the girl's partner failed to turn up, or what not, the friend instantly demands:

"Where is she?" "Where is she?"

Some of the more astute cadets then point out the prettiest girl in sight saying:

"There she is; she's a fiend," meaning she is all that is to be desired, and lead off their victim apparently in her direction, but by a well-planned movement, the victim is shunted off so that before he realizes it he finds himself bowing before Miss L. P. His comrade has escaped in the crowd, leaving him to "darkness and despair." Here begins a desultory conversation, not marked by any great intellectual effort.

L. P.: "Do you like to dance?"

Cadet: "Yes, do you?"

(Long pause—atmosphere strained.)

Polite cadet: "Isn't this a beautiful hall?"

L. P.: "Yes, how many lights are there in the ceiling?"

Cadet: "340."

(Second longer pause—atmosphere at breaking point.)

Usually a chap relieves the situation by suggesting:

"Let's go out on the balcony."

There one can at least console himself with the beauty of the scene, for unless devoid of all feeling, no person can behold the glory of the Hudson from the balcony of Cullum Hall, by night, or better, by moonlight without being greatly stirred.

Two hundred feet immediately below the balcony lies the river, apparently calm and unruffled, but anyone who knows it well visualizes the deep current beneath that flows resistlessly toward the sea. On moonlight nights its surface is agleam from the rays of the full moon standing almost stock-still over the hills that form the river's opposite banks. Here and there as far down as Anthony's Nose the obscurity is dotted with lights mostly yellow, but with an occasional red or green that tells of the approach of a boat. Peace and beauty reign over this scene. It is as if one were gazing upon the enchanted garden of a land of fairies. Occasionally the charm and wonder of the river are added to by the passage of a night boat that goes churning by, brilliantly lighted, with its name *Berkshire* or *Trojan* outlined in electric lights, and with its searchlight flashing broad beams on the banks, first on this spot, then on the other. The operator plays the beam upon the Riding Hall, then slowly passes it to the Administration building, bathing the tower in light, then to the Officers' Mess, or maybe some caprice will seize him and up dances the beam to the chapel on the hill, descending as captiously to Cullum Hall. For a few moments the

entire balcony is illuminated by the cold light of the searchlight that reveals other cadets and their girls, some seated on the broad granite railing, and others strolling up and down. The beam moves slightly upward, and the beauty of Cullum's classic lines is outlined against the blackness of the night. Then a jerky movement of the operator's arm and darkness once more enshrouds the building. The steamer passes on, darting its beam back and forth like a spoiled child, until it rounds Gee's Point where it is lost to view.

The strains of the music draw all of the couples back to the ball room. A more beautiful hall for a dance could hardly be imagined. Conceived by the artistic brain of Stanford White, it forms a most exquisite setting for the gray and white uniforms of the cadets and the rainbow hues of the gowns. The fine old portraits of West Point's famous generals, the wall bronzes commemorating their deeds, the battle-torn flags, the Mexican cannon, the names of the great victories of the Mexican and Civil wars, are inspiring surroundings for young men and women. The atmosphere of the hall impels the cadets to be chivalrous and courteous. It would be impossible not to have good manners in such a hall. It is no wonder that the cadets enjoy the dances and that the girls find a certain glamour in the entertainments.

On the nights when there are no hops, the concerts are held, and although lacking the brilliancy of the dances, they have a delightful charm of their own. Twice a week the concerts are given in camp, and once a week in front of the quarters of the Superintendent. Upon these occasions the visitors' seats are crowded, chiefly with the officers, their families, and guests. Here and there on the parade

ground are groups of cadets and girls seated on camp stools. The chaperone sits near by wrapped in a blanket to protect her from the heavy dew of the evening. Perhaps, another group will be made more comfortable by some energetic cadets who spread their blankets on the ground for seats and arrange camp stools on their sides for backs. The band is conspicuously placed on a concrete stand, whose brilliant lights cause the iron supports to cast weird shadows over the listening crowd.

On concert nights the camp is much more animated than on hop nights. Many cadets do not go beyond the hedge or frequent the visitors' seats, but remain in their tents stretched out lazily upon their blankets, where they "laugh and joke, and talk and smoke, and turn to boys again." Here, clad chiefly in their underclothes, they comfortably enjoy the music, reveling in the freedom from the stiff uniform.

Occasionally, to add to their pleasure, a squad of plebes is summoned and ordered to prepare for Olympus a delicious "brew." One upper-classman who takes the rôle of Zeus directs the plebe messengers of the gods how to brew the libation. Having detailed one plebe to perform the duties of Ganymede, Zeus orders him to get his own G. I. (galvanized iron) water bucket, clean it thoroughly, squeeze the lemons, add the sugar and water, and taste it until pronounced perfect. To give the brew a proper color and add a little pungency, a bottle of grape juice is recklessly poured into the delectable drink. With the strains of the music floating over the camp and dippers full of "brew" constantly at one's elbow, the upper-classmen reclining at their feast rival the luxury of the Romans of old. Nor are the "messengers" forgotten. They are permitted, as a

reward for their services, to drink their fill from the brimming bucket. Of course, there are a few “eats” too; nothing elaborate, but oh! how good! saltines, peanut butter, and jam! Words to conjure with!

Or perhaps, a roving crowd of Yearlings, restless and filled with adventure, go from company street to company street, visiting, playing pranks and jokes, poking their heads into some plebe’s tent, almost scaring him to death by yelling:

“Mister, what’s your name.”

“Mr. Ducrot, sir!”

“Who am I?” asks the Yearling.

“I don’t know, sir!”

“What!!! don’t know who I am? Well, Mr. Ducrot, you’re pretty ignorant, you get that; you ‘bone’ me up!”

On goes the gang from one tent to another, drawn to some parts of the camp by a “brew” fight, or to another part by the tinkling of some mandolins and strumming of some guitars. From the depths of each street strong voices call out to their comrades in other companies: “Oh-h-h-h-h! Scott Fulton-n-n!” More often the night is startled by the frequent call:

“Turn out a plebe!”

Out of the tents bound a dozen plebes to find out the wishes of the Mighty One.

In the camp there are many sharp contrasts. Strangest of all is to see some serious-minded cadet

seated in his tent calmly reading, enthralled by the contents of a book, while all around him are disturbing distractions. Neither the fluttering of the moths and lady bugs around his electric light, the attentions of the mosquitoes, nor the laughter and chatter of his comrades, nor the crashing music of the band seem to draw him from his imaginary world. Not even the cry of “Yea! Furlo-o-o-o ...!” so oft repeated by the Yearlings, makes any impression upon him. Whenever a Yearling has a little surplus energy that he must get rid of, he sticks his head out of the tent and yells:

“Yea! Furlo-o-o-o ...!”

From all parts of the camp, voices echo the call, and for a few seconds the air vibrates with the sound of hopeful voices.

After a plebe has been recognized and has become a Yearling, the one engrossing thought of his life is his furlough. This furlough, coming at the end of his second year, is the only vacation accorded the cadet in the four years, and is anticipated by him with the keenest yearnings. For two years he has been living under the severest discipline and restrictions and separated from the loved ones at home. The thought of returning again to the family circle and of picking up all of the old threads of friendship causes a lively feeling of joy to fill his manly young heart. It is no wonder that “Yea! Furlo-o-o-o ...!” finds a sympathetic response in the hearts of all who have been cadets.

On Sunday evenings, usually a dull time in camp, the regular concerts by the Military Academy Band are replaced by a concert given by the cadets themselves.

This entertainment is known as the Color Line concert. A canvas is made of the plebe class and all of these who admit any musical talent are ordered to practice. Mandolins, guitars, violins are all brought out and the whole aggregation, plebes and upperclassmen, assemble in front of the hedge. For an hour or more they play and sing for their comrades and friends, who sit around on blankets or camp stools, and wave burning Chinese joss sticks to drive away the tormenting mosquitoes. The simplicity of the entertainment gives to these little Color Line concerts an intimate and charming atmosphere.

As soon as the concert is over the crowd quickly disperses, the girls going to the hotel or wherever they happen to be stopping, and the cadets to their company streets. The quiet of Sunday evening is then for half an hour broken by the shouts of the men as they litter up the company streets trying to assort their clothing for the Monday wash.

“Turn out a wash list, you plebes!” “Step out, Mr. Ducrot!” are heard on all sides.

There grows thereupon before one’s eyes small piles of drawers, undershirts, socks, towels, and white duck uniforms. Each article is carefully counted and listed because if the laundry discover an error on the slip, or find the garment of some other cadet in the bag, a report is entered against the offender for which he receives a demerit. Furthermore, the name of each cadet must be distinctly marked upon each article of clothing.

It is not to be supposed that any such fortunate set of circumstances would escape the attention of the practical jokers among the cadets. Often the

surnames of certain men are identical with the given names of girls, as for example, Grace, or Bell(e) or Nelly. Naturally, their garments are all marked in this way. The jokers surreptitiously steal an article or two from each of the above and slip it in the bag of the most Y. M. C. A. man in the company. The following day when the delinquency list is read out the Corps is thrown into gales of laughter by the following reports:

"Cadet Prude: one pair of drawers in wash marked 'Grace'"; or "Cadet Helldodger: one undershirt in bag marked 'Nelly.'"

The legitimate amusements of the day are at an end. Taps comes and plunges the camp into darkness and all turn in for their much needed rest. It is then that the practical jokers begin to think of their nefarious plots. They remain quiet for some time until the inspections are made and the company commander has retired after his half-hour solitary patrol of the company street. When all the camp is apparently asleep, dark forms steal forth to their rendezvous and proceed in a body to the tent of some classmate to "drag" his cot. Cautiously they approach the tent, grab the ends of the cot with the sleeping form, and quickly drag it to the center of the street. Just as the occupant of the cot is rudely awakened, and tries to arise bewildering to defend his rights, some one of the gang treats him to a cold bath from a bucket of water provided beforehand. In the days of hazing this form of amusement was practiced almost exclusively upon the plebes, but today the men leave the plebes alone and devote their attention to their classmates and friends.

When one is busy and happy the time flies by rapidly

so that before the cadet is aware of its flight, the summer camp is brought to a close with a Color Line entertainment. The spare moments of the Corps are for days beforehand spent in preparation for this event that marks the end of a happy summer. The Practical Military Engineering squad now comes into its own. They build roller coasters, triumphal arches, small theaters with cabarets, Japanese gardens, with the greatest ingenuity and skill. The company streets are transformed into bits of New York, Tokio, and Chinatown. Upon the parade is erected a large open-air dancing platform smothered in the flags of all nations, where the cadets and their guests dance away the last evening in camp. They make the most of their opportunity, for the next day they must return to the barracks and commence the Academic term.

Once the studies have been resumed, the time for diversion of any sort is limited. The entire day from 6:00 until 10:00 P.M. is employed with studies, drills, and necessary personal duties, so that there is nothing for the cadet but work, work, work. There are, however, two weekly breaks in the severe routine. One of these lulls is on Wednesday afternoon when there are no drills, an arrangement that gives two hours of leisure to the cadets.

There are many ways of driving away dull care during these two hours. The Second and Third Classmen, who have riding privileges, ride on the roads around West Point where they enjoy, in the autumn, a variety of scenes of surpassing beauty. Clad in their riding clothes, they impatiently await in the barracks, usually in the lower hall, the first note of “release from quarters” that is blown at 3:50 P.M. The moment the bugler raises his instrument to his

lips and sends forth the first sound of release from quarters the "ridoids," except First Classmen, burst from the hall and race to the stables in order to secure their favorite mount. Each First Classman has his mount assigned to him, so that he can be more leisurely in his movements.

Other men who prefer the society of books spend all of their leisure at the library where they seek out a quiet corner and a big leather arm chair and lose themselves in their surroundings. They enjoy the atmosphere of calm dignity and peace that pervades the reading rooms in refreshing contrast to the noise of barracks where the men are constantly running in and out, calling to one another.

The noise in barracks, however, makes no impression on the men who spend their leisure catching up with sleep. An inspection of the rooms on Wednesday and Saturday afternoons would disclose many a cadet "pounding joyously his ear." Grown weary by the routine, he does not resist the overpowering feeling of fatigue, but abandons himself to a delicious slumber.

Meanwhile, numbers of his comrades are out on the athletic field engaged in tennis, golf, or if not playing, encouraging by their presence the work of the football team. The leisure moments of a large percentage of the cadets are given over in the fall to practicing football songs and yells. Usually, some cadet who lacks self-consciousness and who is popular with his fellows, is selected as cheer leader. Under his direction the cadets practice their songs and yells, while the team perfects its play in front of them on the gridiron. At no institution of learning does there exist among the students a greater *esprit*

de corps than among the cadets. In the fall, all sorts of personal wishes and inclinations are stifled in order to attend the cheering practice, and bring it to a high degree of perfection for the Saturday afternoon games on the home grounds, and chiefly for the contest with the Navy. Few of the cadets fail to turn out for the cheering, because these are accused of lacking in spirit, and thereby lose prestige with their comrades.

Cadets who elect to devote their time to other forms of athletics, however, are regarded with no reproach, but men who absent themselves in order to attend teas or to go "spooning" are looked upon with some disfavor. Corps spirit ranks everything in the eyes of the cadet, and he justly demands that it come first.

Such is the way that cadets spend their two hours of leisure on Wednesday afternoons. After the 1:30 P.M. inspection on Saturday the cadets are also at liberty for the remainder of the day. They spend their time as described above, the various diversions changing slightly with the seasons. Saturday is anticipated with the greatest pleasure, for in addition to the afternoon leisure, the evening is free to do as one pleases. How welcome is the relaxation from incessant study! There are so many things to do. Some men attend the hops that are held twice a month; others dine out at the officers' quarters; still others go to the "Movies" which have become a stock entertainment every Saturday evening in the gymnasium. Advantage is taken of the freedom to visit one another's rooms in the barracks, to laugh, to talk, to "knock," possibly to make some "fudge" on the electric stove that spends the week days hidden in the recesses of some mattress. Perhaps one of the men has received some money from home, unknown

to the authorities, and has treated his comrades to unlimited quantities of Huyler's from the Boodlers, or maybe an invitation has been received to a real "party" after taps where cold turkey, jams, nuts, sandwiches, smuggled into quarters, are eaten by an eternally hungry crowd. After such a feast the condition of the room can better be imagined than described. The next morning the occupants make the most frantic efforts to remove the grease spots from the floor and table before the Sunday morning inspection. All of the previous night's feasters lend a hand in the scrubbing and polishing; the plebes are called in to wave towels in the air, or anoint the furniture with bay rum to drive out all odors of food that hung over the room from the previous evening.

The two weekly breaks of Wednesday and Saturday are increased, however, when the snows come in November. Drilling out of doors then becomes impossible so that from 4:00 until 6:00 P.M. daily, the cadets are at liberty. Most of the men spend these gray afternoon hours in the gymnasium, or in reading. The Second Class has its riding class during this period.

After the football season, the diversions of the winter months are few. The "spoonoids" whose acquaintance we made in camp recommence their activities, chiefly visiting the quarters of officers. The most pernicious ones are called by their comrades "Tea Hounds" or "Parlor Snakes," in a good-natured spirit, of course. The percentage of cadets who meet the officers' families socially is small. The men who do most of the visiting upon the Post are army officers' sons who have known some of the instructors at other Posts.

It is regrettable that so many men go through West Point without having known any of the officers or their families socially. They meet the officers only in an official way where the demands of discipline require formal relations. This has a tendency to remove the officer too much from this large number of cadets who lack the opportunity of knowing informally men with whom they will later serve. Many cadets in consequence form altogether erroneous impressions of their instructors that they carry with them through their entire service, unless they are fortunate enough to meet these gentlemen later on. While at West Point had they conversed informally for a few minutes only over the dinner table, or at a dance, this impression would have been eradicated.

The great gulf that has always separated the cadet from the officer is, however, yearly becoming narrower. I have observed lately a different attitude of the officers toward the cadets. Their manners are more cordial, more sympathetic, and more informal. They treat the cadets more like men instead of schoolboys; their manner is more that of a superior officer toward a junior. The result is that the old defensive attitude of the cadet toward his instructors is gradually disappearing, and he now regards his officers as instructor coadjutors instead of instructor tyrants. This spirit is highly beneficial to both officer and cadet, because the latter, feeling that his instructor is ready to aid him, becomes very receptive and consequently calls forth from the former a natural response unhampered by self-consciousness.

Graduates of the Academy have often expressed their opinion that the transition from a cadet to an officer

is too abrupt, and have regretted that before graduation a cadet did not acquire more the viewpoint of an officer. It is not possible for a cadet to gain, simply through official contact with an officer, ideas regarding the service and little points concerning the command of enlisted men. Instruction in these matters is provided, but it must be remembered that time is limited, and that all recitations, lectures, talks, are in general marked by formality and a certain degree of restraint.

In order to make a distinction between the First Class and the under classes, the authorities have established a social organization called the "First Classmen's Club." Its object is to segregate the First Class from the remainder of the Corps, entrust to it greater powers of command over the other cadets, and to put into its hands more fully the discipline of the rest of the Corps. In other words, its object is to inculcate in its members a greater feeling of responsibility by giving them greater powers accompanied by greater privileges. The privileges that are accorded thereby make them feel that they have passed the schoolboy period, and prepare them to accept properly the greater privileges of an officer. Although it is called the "First Classmen's Club," it is in no sense a club as known in civilian life. Nothing to drink, or to eat, is permitted, nor are there pool or billiard tables. The Club has a spacious hall over the north sally-port of the new barracks; it is supplied with papers, magazines, a phonograph, a piano, and games such as dominoes and chess, and comfortable lounging chairs. This meager equipment may appear ludicrous to the college man who is accustomed to the comforts and luxuries of his fraternities, but to the West Pointer who knows nothing but Spartan

simplicity for the past three years, it means a great deal. The First Classmen have the privilege of using the Club at all times during the day, during call to quarters as well as during release from quarters, but men who are deficient in their studies are denied its use during study periods. The affairs of the Club are regulated by a Board of Governors, of which the first captain is a member ex-officio.

With the exception of the First Classmen's Club the authorities do not permit any social organizations such as fraternities among the cadets. In the first place, such bodies are in conflict with the principles of democracy upon which the institution was founded and which still characterizes every act of its administration; and in the second place, the cadet's time is otherwise employed to a greater extent than that of any other university student in the country. West Pointers have no time for much else but to study their profession and develop their bodies. The relaxations provided for their spare moments are simple, healthful, and democratic.

There is, however, an organization at West Point called the Dialectic Society. This body was originally organized as a literary club in 1824 for purposes of discussing subjects more or less profound, and of affording members an opportunity to read their literary efforts. Today, it is an assembly room open to all upper-classmen who gather there either to read or chat, or to enjoy the good fellowship of their comrades. It is also used as a gathering place whenever the Corps wishes to deliberate upon some weighty question that affects their body and that calls for a solution by a referendum. Its rooms are now over the east sally-port of the north barracks. Old graduates will remember its location as the hall

over the north sally-port of the old barracks. The present room is larger and better adapted for the increased number of the Corps.

As the fall wears on the principal topic of conversation wherever the cadets are gathered, whether in the Dialectic Hall or in the First Classmen's Club, is the approaching Christmas leaves. All thoughts center on the mid-winter vacation, and efforts are bent to keeping off the delinquency list. Not all cadets get Christmas leave. Those of the upper classes are granted leaves from December 23d to 4:00 P.M., December 31st, provided that they are not undergoing examinations, or special punishment, and that their number of demerits for the preceding year has not been greater than nine per month in barracks and twelve per month in camp. There are other provisos attached, chief of which is the condition that a cadet must visit relatives or friends. This regulation prohibits them from going to New York and staying at the hotels. This restriction works a great hardship upon cadets from distant States who have no relatives nearby, or who do not happen to have made friends in the East; but its promulgation was found necessary to prevent the cadets from going to the hotels where they borrowed money and got into debt.

The tendency at West Point is to be more and more liberal about granting leaves of absence. I personally feel that the new policy is the correct one. The First Classmen especially should have the privilege of going to New York occasionally during their last year. Their close restriction to the Reservation at West Point where everything is done for them makes them too dependent and not sufficiently self-reliant. Their appreciation, however, of the vacation is

indeed keen. No more happy faces could be imagined than those of the cadets going on leave as they descend the hill to the station. Not even the woe-begone and dejected attitude of their less fortunate comrades can detract one bit from the exhilaration of their spirits. Those left behind, either on account of studies or conduct, spend their time tramping in the woods, or skating, bobbing, riding, reading, or else "boning" for the dread ordeal of the examination.

The vacation ends on December 31st when the men on leave return to the Post. That night is held the New Year's hop for which the girls in shoals come to West Point. It has always remained a mystery to me where these girls come from. All of a sudden they descend upon the Post like a swarm of locusts, and the next day as quickly disappear.

The characteristic feature of the New Year's hop occurs at midnight. A few seconds before twelve o'clock, a musician in the orchestra sounds the "attention." An impressive stillness falls over the ball room, while the trumpeter blows "Taps" just as the old year dies. Not a person in the whole room stirs. At the first stroke of twelve, the trumpeter blows the "Reveille," a signal that another year has awakened.

The cadets of the upper classes then rush to the center of the ball room, form into class groups, and give their class yell. The under classes yell for the First Class which politely responds with a class yell for each. The First Classmen then end the incident by a yell, adding three prolonged and joyous cries:

"Never again! Never again! Never again!"

They mean that never again as cadets at West Point

will they attend a New Year's dance. They are announcing to all present the completion of a definite period, the closing of one chapter of their lives that can never again be relived. The music starts up, the dancers float off, and the incident is soon forgotten, but to one standing by who takes the trouble to reflect a little there is an element of sadness in the almost debonair manner that these young men renounce a portion of their lives that has not been lacking in benefits and in happy associations.

After the mid-winter break nothing interrupts the routine of the cadets' ordinary diversions until the annual play on the 20th of February. The upper-classmen give the *Hundredth Night Play*. It is ordinarily a satire upon conditions at the Academy. The setting is invariably West Point, and the principal characters are the officers on duty. The other characters satirize the type with which West Point abounds: the cadet girl, her friend, the chaperone, the cadet "spoonoid," the professors and instructors. Shouts of laughter greet the appearance of the impersonations of the officers, and rounds of applause follow jokes gotten off at their expense. There is nothing assumed or counterfeit about the genuineness of the cadets' enjoyment. There is, of course, an officer who censors the play before its production, for although there is no more polite body of men in the world than the Corps of Cadets, yet their enthusiasm and eagerness might lead them to indulge in personalities that would offend. The Tactical officers who are immediately over the cadets are most generally impersonated; the exaggeration of their little weaknesses is not more enjoyed by the cadets than by the officers themselves. In fact,

whenever any one of them is left out he rather regrets it.

The approach of spring leaves but little time for pleasure. Drills are resumed after study hours, followed by parade and guard mounting, then more study hours after supper. The Battalions must be whipped into shape for June week; each class must be given drills to prepare the individuals for their coming task in June. Many things occupy the cadets' attention. The First Classmen can think of little else except graduation. They are busy looking over samples of uniforms, boots, civilian clothing, or ordering same, or trying on uniforms. Some few have the added responsibility of planning for their approaching marriage. Naturally, the interest of First Classmen in cadet activities begins to wane. The Second Class anticipate their First Class camp when the reins of power pass to them, the Yearlings dream and dream and dream of furlough. Every spring evening during the half-hour after supper they gather upon Battle Monument to sing their furlough songs. Little snatches float across the Plain, partly unintelligible, but from which the words "love" and "girl" and "moon," sung with greater emphasis apparently, can be clearly distinguished. Only the "call to quarters" drags them back to earth, whereupon with a vociferous "Yea! Furlo-o-o-o!" they break up the meeting and march back to barracks, arm in arm, singing of the pleasures to come when they will leave the Academy for two months and return to the bosom of their families.

Not least of the pleasures at West Point is the camaraderie. There are always plenty of friends to be had, fine manly fellows with clean thoughts, affectionate and kind. A cadet rarely fully

appreciates what this comradeship means until he is about to graduate. Then he reflects upon his four years spent in the society of so many fine men, and he feels a poignant regret at leaving their midst. The recollections of the hardships endured and overcome together, of the mutual confidences, of the sympathy when needed, of little sacrifices made for him, fill him with tenderness and sadness. He finds it hard to say good-bye to the truest friends that he will ever have.

The last few months, however, are so filled with duties and obligations that he has few moments for reflection. Before he knows it June and graduation are upon him. He then attends his own Graduation Ball. Just prior to the last dance, once again the First Class assembles in the center of the room, gives its class yell followed by the three cries:

“Never again! Never again! Never again!”

A little lump comes in his throat as the echo dies away. Never again will he be a cadet at West Point. A yell that has heretofore been most musical has all of a sudden become most melancholy.

Never again!

CHAPTER XI
STRENGTHENING THE

MORAL FIBER

When a new class of cadets reports at West Point, it is composed of men as diverse in appearance, in points of view, and in character as the parts of the country from which they come. But after they have been at the Academy for a couple of years a marked change occurs, and by the time they are ready to graduate they have undergone a complete metamorphosis. In some mysterious manner they seem to have been leveled to a certain standard, like some scraggly hedge that has been scrupulously trimmed by its painstaking guardian. The fat ones have lost their extra pounds; the thin ones have made good their deficit; the round-shouldered have straightened up, and the hollow-chested have filled out. Instead of a heterogeneous looking lot of men, they give the impression of having been made from the same die. And then too there is a uniformity about their point of view. Whereas at entrance their whole thought was colored by the life from which they came and by what they hoped to be, once enrolled in the Corps, they quickly and involuntarily have found themselves worshiping identical ideals—the ideals of Duty, Honor, and Country. They have discovered at West Point certain standards that have been approved by other men, and they have gradually adopted them as their own. But the real stamp of West Point appears in their faces. The imprint is evident wherever a group of the cadets are gathered together, but it is never so apparent as at the graduation ceremonies when the cadets individually mount the platform to receive their diplomas. Then one can see a certain look in the eye and a certain feeling of strength about the features that is the

same. It is the look of men who have accomplished something and of the strength that comes from character.

What, you ask, is this leveling influence at the Academy? It comes from discipline, the discipline of the body, the discipline of the mind, and the discipline of the soul. It is the one governing factor in the success of West Point. All three kinds of it begin on the day that the cadet reports for duty, and continues without interruption during his entire course. The discipline of the body and the mind is a comparatively simple affair, especially when there is a willingness on the part of the subject, but the discipline of the soul is the influence that is hardest to make cadets appreciate. Some people shy when the word discipline is mentioned; they think that it means to break a man's will and to destroy his individuality, but that is not so. The discipline that I speak of is a process of education whereby a man's mental attitude is trained to a certain viewpoint; whereby his actions unconsciously respond to the correct ethical view of his duty. It is aimed to teach respect for law and order, to teach truthfulness and honesty, loyalty and obedience. It inculcates respect for superiors, if not for the man, then for the office that he holds. It teaches a soldier the sacredness of orders; it is the quality without which no army is successful.

Under this strong influence of discipline come men from all sections of our great country and from all classes of society. Viewed exteriorly they are, upon reporting, as motley a looking lot as could be imagined. An examination of their interiors would reveal natures and characters of equal variety. Some come from homes where they have received the most

careful moral nurture; others from environments of vague and lax standards. Side by side with youths who are models of truth are lads with uncertain ideas of right and wrong. Among the throng are brilliant boys and stupid ones; well-educated lads and those whose advantages have been of the most limited sort; sons of rich men and boys who have known the meaning of want. From everywhere they come: from the city and from the farm; from the mountain and from the plain.

It is interesting to dwell for a moment on the following table showing the sources of the personnel of the cadet body. Herein are listed the occupations of the parents of the cadets and the number engaged in each, covering a period of fifty years.

Accountants	3
Agents	62
Architects	5
Artists	4
Auctioneer	1
Auditor	1
Author	1
Baggagemaster	1
Bakers	4
Bankers and bank officers	90
Barbers	4
Bookkeepers	18
Brewers	3
Brokers	40

Builders	2
Butchers	2
Capitalist	1
Chief of police	1
City marshal	1
Clergymen	128
Clerk of House of Representatives	1
Clerks	90
Collectors	4
Commercial travelers	13
Conductors	2
Contractors	38
Cook	1
Cotton buyer	1
County officers	74
Cutlery commissioner	1
Dairyman	2
Dentists	14
Detectives	2
Distiller	1
Dock commissioner	1
Dock master	1
Draftsman	1
Druggists	13
Editors	62
Electroplater	1
Engineers:	
Civil	13

Mechanical	10
Locomotive	3
Stationary	1
Enlisted men	4
Express business	2
Farmers and planters	1,149
Fishing master	1
Foreman	1
Gardeners	3
General business	5
Hatter	1
Heads of corporations	10
Hotel keepers	55
Iceman	1
Importer	1
Inspector of buildings	1
Inspectors of factories	2
Inspectors of police	2
Insurance business	38
Inventor	1
Jewelers	3
Journalists	8
Justice of peace	1
Laborers	29
Lawyers and judges	645
Letter carriers	1
Librarians	2
Lithographer	1

Liverymen	15
Lumbermen	20
Manager of brewery	1
Manager of engines and boilers	1
Manager of factory	1
Manager of land company	1
Manufacturers	151
Marble dealer	1
Mechanics	341
Member of city board	1
Member of State Legislature	1
Members of Congress	32
Merchant tailor	1
Merchants	722
Messenger	1
Millers	11
Mining	26
Museum keeper	1
Musician, band leader	1
Musicians	2
Newspaper correspondent	1
Newspaper manager	1
No occupation	191
Nurserymen	6
Officers of the Army	362
Officers of the Navy	59
Officers of volunteers	21
Oil business	2

Overseers	4
Photographers	6
Physicians	367
Pilot	1
Policemen	7
Police justices	2
Politicians	3
Postmasters	5
President of manufacturing company	1
President of steam heating company	1
President of wire mill	1
Presidents of colleges	4
Presidents of insurance companies	3
Printers	12
Professors	27
Proprietor of elevator company	1
Publishers	8
Railroad employees	6
Railroad officers	13
Ranchmen	2
Real estate	37
Restaurant keeper	1
Salesmen	5
Saloonkeeper	1
School teachers	56
Secretaries	14
Ship captains	25
Speculators	10

State officers	27
Steamboatman	1
Steward	1
Stock dealers (cattle)	10
Stock raisers	6
Stocks	1
Superintendent of coal and iron company	1
Superintendent of factory	1
Superintendent of iron work	1
Superintendent of mine	1
Superintendent of prison	1
Superintendent of railroad	1
Superintendents of gas works	2
Superintendents of schools	4
Surveyors	5
Tanners	2
Teacher of garment cutting	1
Teacher of music	1
Teamster	1
Theater manager	1
Undertakers	5
United States civil officers	85
Unknown	39
Wagonmaster	1
Warden of prison	1

It is to the sons of men in this list that West Point applies its discipline in order to create the type of

officer that the Government desires for its Army. From them must be eliminated the unfit and the unworthy during the molding process to which they are subjected.

The immediate effect of the application of discipline to this variety of material is the creation of an ideal democracy. All of the new arrivals are thrown indiscriminately into the melting pot, and no attention is paid to any man's antecedents. The boys of rich and influential parents are not allowed little life-preservers of wealth, family, and position whereby they might remain on top, but they must boil away, sometimes on top, sometimes at the bottom of the pot, rubbing and bumping against boys to whom riches and influence are strangers. Whether they sink or swim, live or die, survive or perish, depends on individual effort alone. Men are esteemed at West Point for what they are and not for what they have. Each man feeling that he has as good an opportunity to succeed as the other man becomes imbued from the outset of his cadet career with the spirit of democracy that exists at the Academy.

From the moment that a cadet enters West Point, his past life, experiences, advantages, record, disappear into oblivion so far as the authorities and other cadets are concerned. No reference is ever made to any cadet's home, to his connections, to his family, unless he introduces the subject. Once he becomes a cadet, a new clean sheet of his life is started for him, and whatever is entered thereon depends solely upon himself. Every man at West Point has the same chance—the chance of advancement based upon merit and efficiency and upon nothing else. It makes no difference to the officers in charge or to the other

cadets whether a man's family is wealthy or distinguished. As a matter of fact this information is rarely known because all of the cadets report together; they are totally unknown to those in charge so that there is no possible way to ascertain anything about the cadet's antecedents. They lose their identity completely, and so much so that the upper-classmen take months to learn their real names, meanwhile calling them by the generic names, Ducrot, Dumbguard, and Dumbjohn.

The character of the rooms in barracks illustrates most strikingly this democratic ideal that discipline fosters. The plain and homely furnishings of each room are identical in pattern, material, and quantity, so that no cadet is housed better than his fellow. The walls are free from pictures, the windows from curtains, the floors from rugs. There are no soft easy chairs but only an old-fashioned wooden one for each man, that is as hard for the rich cadet as for the poor Mr. Ducrot. Nor are there any cliques that occupy particular rooms in the barracks. Each company has so many rooms for its members, and as far as possible the men within the company may choose their roommates. Their selection is made on mutual attraction and congeniality solely. Whenever two chaps enjoy each other's companionship, that indefinable mingling of mute spirits, they try to room together.

And then again, the cadets are free from the distinctions and the social barriers that money creates. They are prohibited from receiving any money from their homes and are not allowed the handling of the pay that they receive from the Government. Instead, the authorities supply all of their wants, their food, their clothing, their books,

their amusements, so that they might have no need of cash. In fact there is but one store on the reservation where they can spend money, and that is a place called “The Boodlers,” a sort of a general store at the foot of the hill near the gas tank. Here they may, if out of debt, obtain a permit for two dollars per month, and only those cadets with permits are allowed even to enter the store.

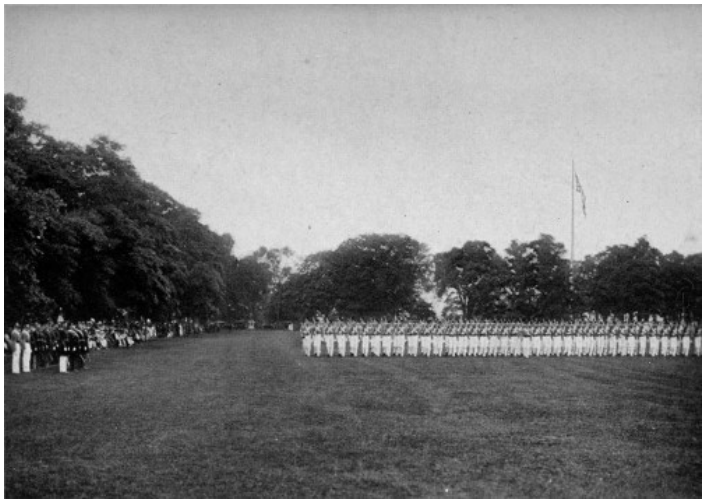
In this ideal democracy, among the influences that are considered prejudicial to good order and military discipline are drinking, gambling, and cigarette smoking. All alcoholic drinks are consequently banished from the life of the young embryo officer, for he must keep a clear brain in order to think straight and master his problems. He is permitted only the wholesome beverages of milk, tea, and coffee that are supplied in the greatest abundance. Occasionally there is a case of drinking among the cadet body, but as a vice, intoxication does not exist at the Military Academy. One has only to look at the healthy ruddy complexions of the cadets to be convinced of the truth of this statement. Any girl might envy them their skins, whose brilliancy and transparency would soon disappear if late hours and beer were permitted. Nor is there any gambling in the Corps, unless the betting of one’s ice cream on the result of some football game be so considered. The cadets are not even allowed the use of cards or of any games of chance. They may not indulge in so harmless a pastime as bridge. Their chief solace in their free moments must be their pipes of briar, for cigarettes are frowned upon and regarded as contraband of war, liable to seizure by any Tactical officer. The weed is confiscated and the cadet receives a report. What becomes of those confiscated

cigarettes has always been a matter of great speculation. Tactical officers are always under suspicion. I remember one case where a cadet was caught with three hundred cigarettes in his possession and told by his officer to turn them in at the Guardhouse. This order grieved the cadet very much because he felt that perhaps someone else would enjoy those cherished smokes. He therefore bored a hole in each one with a pin, before complying with his directions. Soon after turning in the cigarettes, he was reported for having mutilated them and was made to walk punishment tours on the Area for many days. The inference was that some disappointed Tactical officer could not make the cigarettes draw.

The ability to maintain a high state of discipline at West Point is due partially to the wisdom of placing the instruction of the cadets in the hands of officers who are themselves graduates of the Academy. The officers have more prestige with the cadets and they understand better the preparation of these young men for their future duties than could civilian instructors. They have to a greater degree than most instructors the prestige of a physical and moral superiority over their students. They are familiar with the spirit of the institution and are always on the alert to guard against corrupt influences. They better understand how to instill the austere virtues that a soldier ought to have, and how to form a brave and virile heart in their young charges. In a measure they re-create the man and develop in him the national soul.

The attitude of the cadets themselves, however, toward their discipline is the real reason for the success of West Point's efforts to turn out men who

are high-minded and honorable. They are as zealous as the officers over them in seeing that their associates live up to certain standards. Honor is their shibboleth, and each new man upon his arrival is instructed in what is meant by Corps Honor. Upperclassmen give the plebes lectures wherein they explain the ethics that govern their body, and leave them no room for doubt regarding the penalties for an infringement of their code. From the outset of their careers cadets are taught the hatred of a lie, and are made to understand that only by the most scrupulous regard for the truth, every detail of it, can they be considered fit to hold their places as cadets and gentlemen. Any cadet who is found guilty of making a false statement regarding even the most trifling circumstance is dismissed. If he is caught in a dishonorable act, he is reported by his fellows to the authorities, or told by his classmates that his resignation would be favorably received. In order to do justice to any man accused of breaking the code, the cadets have among their body a Vigilance Committee that is composed of representatives from the three upper classes. These men investigate all questionable acts that ordinarily would not come to the eyes of the authorities, and if they are satisfied that the man is guilty they report him. For example, at the written examinations the officers never supervise the cadets as regards their moral conduct, but frequently leave the room for long periods. If any man should take advantage of these circumstances to cheat, his act, if seen by a comrade, is at once reported to either the Vigilance Committee or to the officers. It is apparent therefore that the honor of the Corps will always remain unsullied so long as it is left in the hands of the cadets themselves.



A Review for the Chief of the Staff of the Army

This rigid code of discipline to which the cadet is subjected for four years and the influence of the honor system in the Corps develop in him to a high degree the sentiment of duty. At West Point duty comes first. The idea is that when a cadet is given a task to perform he will approach it with a strength of purpose that never gets weary or tired. It teaches him to make his resolve so strong that he can listen to the murmurings of the ignorant, to their sophistry, receive their insults and slanders, conscious that the ideals for which he stands will eventually triumph. It is the sentiment that will sustain him not only in time of war, for then he has the sympathy of the people, but in time of peace when the average layman who does not understand the character of his work condemns it as an activity that produces

nothing.

The result of four years' immersion in the atmosphere at West Point is the molding of the cadet's character. When he entered the Academy he was just a boy, fresh from the hands of his parents and still malleable, but when his course has been completed under the painstaking care of his foster mother, his standards have been crystallized and he has developed into a man of courage, intellect, and honor. And when graduation day arrives, and West Point hands each man his diploma, with it she gives her stamp of approval and acknowledges her willingness to entrust to his keeping the cherished traditions of the Military Academy.

CHAPTER XII
SPIRITUAL INFLUENCES

Cadets love to lay aside the restrictions of their everyday routine life, put on their athletic uniforms and most care-free manners, and wander among the beautiful hills that are all around West Point. They like to enjoy the emotions that spring from a close communion with Nature, both in the winter, when the afternoons are short and the valleys quickly fill up with purple lights, and in the summer, when the country is extravagantly clothed in luxuriant foliage. If the day of the cadet has been warped by all sorts of petty annoyances, all that he has to do is to climb

to Redoubt No. 4 or go to Fort Putnam, and feast his eyes upon a scene of unsurpassing beauty in order to have his cramped soul straightened out and to be lifted above his material surroundings. What greater pleasure does his life afford than to lie in the warm spring sunshine of Fort Putnam and drink in the panorama below? All of the cares of his daily existence drop away under the spell of a mysterious kind of an influence that fills his being and stirs his innate nobility. He is thankful that he is privileged to live in such a wonderful and beautiful place. Its effect is like that of some drug that soothes and calms, that gives him a kindly feeling toward humanity, and that makes him glad to be alive. On all sides he is affected by Nature who has done her best to develop all of his spirituality and to awaken his finer sensibilities. Wherever he wanders or wherever the eye roves, there is a scene to admire, almost reverentially. No less appealing than the hills is the river with its many moods.

And there are the buildings whose beauty likewise exerts a subtle spiritual influence and acts as a stimulant to the development of the cadet's æsthetic tastes. His Barracks, his Recitation Halls, his Riding Academy, his Gymnasium, his Mess Hall, and especially his Chapel, built as they all are from the natural rock of West Point's hills, seem to grow right out of their surroundings as if God planted them there as a part of His natural design. Their presence is ever a reminder to the cadet that he has consecrated his life to an ideal, for on their exteriors are carved in conspicuous places the shields of his Alma Mater and of his country, bearing their motto of duty and honor. The walls of the interiors are hung with the portraits of famous sons of the

Academy, whose devotion to their country and to an ideal serves as an inspiration to the cadet and makes him sensible to the value of moral qualities.

Hovering over both the grounds and the buildings is the influence of the flag. As a cadet sees it floating from its tall white staff, somehow it has come to have a different meaning from the days when he was a care-free civilian. It seems to him to possess a personality of which he never before was aware. He feels for it a real reverence, because he is conscious of being in the presence of something big, as if beholding the whole power of a nation. He sees in it the emblem of the country's sovereignty and the symbol to which he has pledged his life's service. Mingled with his feeling of reverence is his personal affection. Day after day he has watched it silhouetted against the sky and has felt the thrill of patriotism, when it was being lowered at retreat to the accompaniment of *The Star Spangled Banner*.

It is not to the beauty of Nature and to the flag alone that the cadet must turn for his spiritual refreshment. The Chaplain, a man with a fine grip upon the Corps, gathers together in classes those cadets who desire to come, and explains to them the word of God. His Bible classes today are a continuation of the famous classes that were held at West Point for so many years by Miss Anna Warner. During the summer encampment, she taught her boys in the old chapel after the morning services, where for one hour the cadets received from her sainted lips an interpretation of the Scriptures, and were elevated by contact with her noble character. I can see her before me now, her quaint silk dress, her small delicate body, her ethereal face framed in the neatest and whitest of curls that peeped from out of her

charming poke bonnet. Her whole presence radiated goodness and spirituality. Prior to the dismissal of the class she would regularly present to each cadet a fragrant little bouquet of flowers that she had that morning gathered from her modest garden, and arranged into the daintiest of nosegays. These few flowers were simple, like the donor, but they brought into the life of the recipient a spiritual perfume that awakened his memories and took him back home to rose-scented gardens and neat graveled paths where another sainted woman was praying for the welfare of his soul. So he took the little nosegay back to camp with him and put it carefully in his tumblerful of water alongside of his tent, as a reminder of what he should be, and as a check on ignoble impulses. Here and there in his own company streets, he would see his comrades' bouquets, little dashes of color, the red of the petunia, the blue of the cornflower, the yellow of the marigold, and as they caught his eye they seemed to be a part of Miss Warner still exerting her inspiring influence.

It is regrettable that the cadets of the future will never have the good fortune to know her, for last year (1916) she passed to her reward after ninety years in the service of God. Although it is rare that anyone outside the Academy is buried in the cemetery at West Point, her body was laid to rest there, near the bluff that overlooks the Hudson and in sight of her home on Constitution Island across the river, that a short time before her death she generously gave to the Government. To the Corps of Cadets that she loved, she willed a magnificent original portrait of Washington by Gilbert Stuart, that now hangs in the library.

Her Bible class still goes on. Every Sunday when the

weather is fair the Chaplain takes the cadets over to Constitution Island, where, under the trees that Miss Warner loved so well, he continues her work. If Miss Warner sees her “boys” studying the word of God in the shadow of the old Revolutionary House, hallowed by her presence, what pleasure she must feel!

If, however, neither the beauties of Nature nor the interest of the Bible class appeal to the cadet, he cannot help having his spiritual self stirred by the impressive service at the Cadet Chapel. All cadets are required to attend divine service. The large majority go to the Cadet Chapel because it is for all denominations, the building never having been consecrated to any particular faith, but about ten per cent. of the cadets attend service at the Catholic Chapel.

The service at the Cadet Chapel is so impressive and interesting that the majority of the cadets look forward with pleasure to Sunday morning. I suppose that all former cadets will smile upon reading this statement, when they remember the reluctance with which they donned their dress coats and belts for the weekly service, at which they had difficulty in keeping awake while the lessons and sermon were being read. But times have changed since then, due principally to the atmosphere of the new Chapel and the music of its splendid organ. Sir Roger de Coverly would rejoice to behold so model a congregation and to hear such excellent singing.

The interior of the Chapel is worthy of its beautiful service. “Storied windows richly dight” rise majestically to the high Gothic roof and throw upon the gray walls a myriad of delicate lights, pale blues

and pinks, saffrons, and deep purples. Two parallel rows of silk flags, the scarlet of the artillery, the somber blue of the infantry, and the gold of the cavalry, hang from the long covered galleries on either side of the nave. The deep rich shades of the magnificent memorial window shroud the chancel in a “dim religious light.” Nor is the service lacking in military pomp. Company after company of gray-clad cadets, their brass buttons shining, file briskly into the Chapel. The tramping of hundreds of pairs of feet up the aisle and the rattling of their buttons against the pews as they take their seats reverberate through the vast hall. The officers, in their uniforms, and their families assemble in the seats along the sides.

The first note from the organ announces the commencement of the service. The choir of over a hundred voices, singing the processional hymn, walk two by two in slow and solemn order up the aisle to their places in the stalls. A wave of music sweeps through the church as the procession moves forward. Last of all comes the Chaplain, immaculate in fresh linen surplice, and conspicuous by his distinguished bearing.

The service proceeds. The Chaplain advances to the reading desk and reads the lessons for the day. Inspiring hymns are then sung, followed by an eloquent sermon upon subjects that touch the daily lives of the cadets. Once again the celebrated organ peals forth, and during the offertory casts with its music a spell over the devout congregation. Two stalwart cadet officers then march quickly up the aisle to the chancel where awaits the Chaplain to receive the offerings. The organ’s music fills the church anew and the hall resounds to hundreds of strong voices singing “Praise Father, Son, and Holy

Ghost," followed immediately by the patriotic hymn,

My Country 'tis of thee,
Sweet Land of Liberty,
  Of thee I sing—
Land where our Fathers died,
Land of the Pilgrims' pride,
From every mountain side
  Let Freedom ring!

The Chaplain standing upon the steps of the altar pronounces the solemn benediction, which is scarcely concluded when the choir begins to sing the "Amen" to the accompaniment of Holy Grail motif from *Parsifal*. Faintly at first the singing arises from the stalls, then stronger and stronger, then diminishing in volume until it dies away with a final "Amen."

Besides the service at the Chapel there is another service held on Sundays. It is the Y. M. C. A., a purely religious body among the cadets and not as in the cities a sort of club house where a swimming pool, assembly rooms, and gymnasium are the main attractions. These advantages are already a part of West Point's equipment. The Y. M. C. A. at the Academy meets every Sunday evening after supper in a hall over one of the sally-ports, and here after a few prayers, a speaker makes a short address. On week days the hall is frequented by cadets only to read the papers or to play the victrola, and in Lent the Chaplain holds afternoon services. Formerly the Chaplain held these prayers immediately after breakfast, but once a cadet captain, wishing to remind the cadets that the services would take place immediately after the dismissal of the Battalion,

mixed up his verbs and announced very emphatically "cadets are *cautioned* about the ten-minute service in the Y. M. C. A."! The Sunday service, however, is the reason for the existence of the organization. The prayers are not long and the addresses sometimes most interesting, especially when they relate to the work that the cadet will have to do as an officer. The meetings are usually terminated when the bugler blows the evening call to quarters in the sally-port under the hall. Of all the sounds at West Point, Sunday evening "call to quarters" is the most doleful and depressing. It means that after the break of Saturday and Sunday, the cadet must once more turn to his books and dig out the problems for Monday. When he hears its melancholy, long-drawn-out notes, he has the Sunday evening feeling, which is only a degree more cheerful than the blue Monday feeling, and he reluctantly goes back to his room to begin anew the weekly cycle.

The cadet is really never quite free from the spiritual influences of the Academy. Nature, his Chapel, traditions, precept, and example so arouse and sharpen his insight into things and into himself that his day gradually assumes a new background. These are the influences that, when he is an officer, draw him back to his Alma Mater and make him speak of it always with undisguised affection.

CHAPTER XIII
THE SPIRIT OF WEST

POINT

On a fine bright morning about the middle of June, every year, the Corps of Cadets wakes up to find that Battle Monument and vicinity have been completely transformed. The Quartermaster's men have canopied a portion of the monument's platform with beautiful brand-new flags, and placed under them comfortable wicker chairs for the President, the Secretary of War, the various generals, and other dignitaries who usually honor West Point with their presence on this graduation day. On the front edge of the platform is a rostrum, flag bedecked, for the speaker of the occasion, and spread over the green lawn are rows and rows of seats that await the coming of the cadets. Promptly at ten o'clock, the Corps swings across the parade ground to take its place for the final ceremonies that mark the separation of another class from its midst.

This is the day of days in the life of each man of the graduation class. His four years are at last completed and he is about to be given the great prize for which he has so ardently striven—a commission in the Army. As he takes his seat in front of the platform, he is a little nervous in spite of the joy at having achieved his ambition. He realizes that he is about to sever the ties that have held him fast for the last four years and to bid farewell to a portion of his life that is finished. A little tug comes at his heart-strings but it quickly vanishes as he listens to the eloquent words of the chief speaker, oftentimes the President, unfolding to his receptive imagination the duties and honors that await him in his new life as an officer. And when the President reminds him of West Point,

of her traditions, of the advantages that he has been lovingly given, and of what is expected of him in the Army, there comes to his eyes a moisture from pride and gratitude. Into his mind rapidly crowd a thousand and one recollections of his associations at the Academy. He knows now that he must leave the Corps behind, that he must renounce the delightful camaraderie of its members, and give up the beautiful surroundings wherein he has grown in body, mind, and soul.

It is true that he can no longer wear the "gray," or take away with him his friends, or the buildings, but he does take away with him something that is finer than all of these. One can see it in his face and in his bearing. He goes forth, his heart armed with the triple brass of Duty, Honor, Country, and his soul filled with the Spirit of West Point. All of his nature has been elevated and benefited by this indefinable essence. It forever connects him with hundreds of other men in all parts of our country and identifies him with an institution whose very name, WEST POINT, no matter where seen or heard, thrills him with pleasure. This name connotes the details of the most impressionable period of his life. Even the words themselves seem to have a distinction and personality that no other words possess. They are flavored with romance and make one think of something fresh and crisp and clean, something almost hallowed. They are themselves clothed with the spirit of the place under whose influence and power he will forever remain.

He leaves the Academy to join the great fraternity of West Pointers in the Service, animated by the same spirit. With them, he is this year (1917) called upon

by the President to train for war a large army of his fellow citizens, and prepare them to meet an enemy schooled in the art of war by disciplined leaders. West Point sends him forth to this task, rich in knowledge. His Alma Mater is confident that he will train these men of the new Army in the fundamentals of their profession and that he will inspire them with his ideals of courage and of honor, and imbue them with the Spirit of West Point.

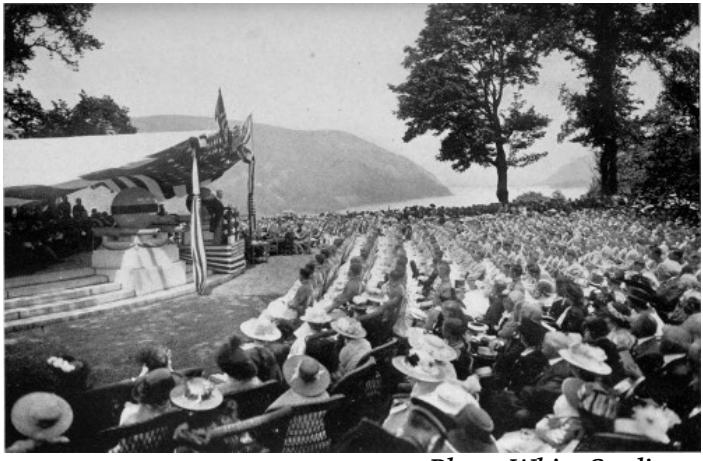


Photo White Studio

Graduation—President Wilson Addressing the Graduating Class
"We'll bid farewell to Cadet grey and don the Army blue"

In the training of the National Army, he will have all sorts of men under his command, but the spirit of the Academy will make him patient and kind with the stupid, lend a hand to the weak, give a word of cheer

to the down-hearted (there will be plenty of them), and instill into all the ideal of duty. The kind of discipline that he himself received at West Point will be theirs. He will teach them to bear uncomplainingly their burdens, to be loyal and obedient, to care for their health, and to march and to fight with a spirit that knows not weariness or depression. Then when these men shall be sufficiently trained, he will go with them to France, in the wake of the first division of Regulars led by a gallant West Pointer, Major-General John J. Pershing. Here he will appreciate as never before the value of a great moral force like the spirit of West Point. It will aid him in overcoming the obstacles in his path and in those of his men, especially when the heroics of war and the novelty of being abroad have ceased to interest them, and they find themselves in the trenches in No Man's Land. They will be drenched by the rain and burnt by the sun; they will have to endure the vermin, the mud, and the dust. They will be driven nearly mad by the shrieking and bursting of the shells, they will see their comrades killed and wounded, and perhaps they too will suffer the same fate, but they will not flinch; because he who leads them will have given them something of his spirit—a part of himself that West Point made. He must be the prop upon which they may lean, if need be, and his spirit the reservoir upon which they may draw for refreshment. And should he be called upon to pay the supreme sacrifice, he will leave them the Spirit of West Point to carry them to victory, while he goes to join the ghostly assemblage of his fellow West Pointers, standing bareheaded to salute him, as he has stood many times in the presence of the living Corps.

The Corps! Bareheaded salute it,
  With eyes up, thanking our God
That we of the Corps are treading,
  Where they of the Corps have trod—
They are here in ghostly assemblage,
  The men of the Corps long dead,
And our hearts are standing attention,
  While we wait for their passing tread.

We, sons of today, we salute you,
  You sons of its earlier day,
We follow, close order behind you
  Where you have pointed the way;
The long gray line of us stretches
  Through the years of a century told,
And the last man feels to his marrow
  The grip of your far-off hold.

Grip hands with us now, though we see not,
  Grip hands with us, strengthen our hearts,
As the long line stiffens and straightens,
  With the thrill that your presence imparts.
Grip hands, though it be from the shadows,
  While we swear, as you did of yore,
Or living or dying to honor
  The Corps, and the Corps, and the Corps.

APPENDIX

(From the Official Register of the United States Military Academy—1916)

WAR DEPARTMENT

Information Relative to the Appointment and Admission of Cadets to the United States Military Academy

(1916 Edition. Revised Annually.)

[Communications relating to matters connected with the Military Academy should be addressed to The Adjutant General of the Army, Washington, D. C.]

THE CORPS OF CADETS

The Act of Congress approved May 4, 1916, provides as follows:

"That the Corps of Cadets at the United States Military Academy shall hereafter consist of two for each Congressional district, two from each Territory, four from the District of Columbia, two from natives of Porto Rico, four from each State at large, and eighty from the United States at large, twenty of whom shall be selected from among the honor graduates of educational institutions having officers of the Regular Army detailed as professors of military science and tactics under existing law or any law hereafter enacted for the detail of officers of the Regular Army to such institutions, and which institutions are designated as 'honor schools' upon the determination of their relative standing at the

last preceding annual inspection regularly made by the War Department. They shall be appointed by the President and shall, with the exception of the eighty appointed from the United States at large, be actual residents of the Congressional or Territorial district, or of the District of Columbia, or of the island of Porto Rico, or of the States, respectively, from which they purport to be appointed: *Provided*, That so much of the Act of Congress approved March fourth, nineteen hundred and fifteen (Thirty-eighth Statutes at Large, page eleven hundred and twenty-eight), as provides for the admission of a successor to any cadet who shall have finished three years of his course at the academy be, and the same is hereby, repealed: *Provided further*: That the appointment of each member of the present Corps of Cadets is validated and confirmed.

"Sec. 2. That the President is hereby authorized to appoint cadets to the United States Military Academy from among enlisted men in number as nearly equal as practicable of the Regular Army and the National Guard between the ages of nineteen and twenty-two years who have served as enlisted men not less than one year, to be selected under such regulations as the President may prescribe: *Provided*, That the total number so selected shall not exceed one hundred and eighty at any one time.

"Sec. 3. That, under such regulations as the President shall prescribe, the increase in the number of cadets provided for by this Act shall be divided into four annual increments, which shall be as nearly equal as practicable and be equitably distributed among the sources from which appointments are authorized."

Annual Increments.—States at large, 21;

Congressional districts, 92; Alaska, District of Columbia, Hawaii and Porto Rico, combined, 1 each year to the source longest without an appointment, and, when the periods are equal, the choice to be by lot; Honor Schools, 5; Regular Army, 23 in 1916, 22 in 1917, 23 in 1918, and 22 in 1919; National Guard, 22 in 1916, 23 in 1917, 22 in 1918, and 23 in 1919.

APPOINTMENTS

How Made.—The appointments from a Congressional district are made upon the recommendation of the Representative in Congress from that district, and those from a State at large upon the recommendations of the Senators of the State. Similarly, the appointments from a Territory are made upon the recommendation of the Delegate in Congress. The appointments from the District of Columbia are made upon the recommendation of the Commissioners of the District. Each person appointed must be an actual resident of the State, District, or Territory from which the appointment is made.

The appointments from the United States at large are made by the President of the United States upon his own selection. The cadets from Porto Rico, who must be natives of that island, are appointed by the President on the recommendation of the Resident Commissioner.

The appointments from among the honor graduates of educational institutions designated as “honor schools” will be made upon the recommendation of the heads of the respective schools.

The appointments from among the enlisted men of the National Guard will be made upon the recommendation of the Governors of the respective States and Territories.

The appointments from among the enlisted men of the regular army will be made upon the recommendation of the Commanding Generals of the Territorial Departments.

The Secretary of War is authorized to permit not exceeding four Filipinos, to be designated, one for each class, by the Governor General of the Philippine Islands, to receive instruction at the United States Military Academy at West Point: *Provided*, That the Filipinos undergoing instruction, shall receive the same pay, allowances, and emoluments as are authorized by law for cadets at the Military Academy appointed from the United States, to be paid out of the same appropriations: *And provided further*, That said Filipinos undergoing instruction on graduation shall be eligible only to commissions in the Philippine Scouts. And the provisions of section 1321, Revised Statutes, are modified in the case of Filipinos undergoing instruction, so as to require them to engage to serve for eight years, unless sooner discharged, in the Philippine Scouts.

Date of Appointments.—Appointments are required by law to be made *one year in advance* of the date of admission, except in cases where, by reason of death or other cause, a vacancy occurs which cannot be provided for by such appointment in advance. These vacancies are filled in time for the next examination.

Candidates.—For each vacancy from a State at large, or Congressional or Territorial district, *three*

candidates should be nominated, one of the candidates to be named as *principal*, one as *first alternate*, and one as *second alternate*. The first alternate, if qualified, will be admitted in the event of failure of the principal; the second alternate, if qualified, will be admitted in the event of the failure of the principal and the first alternate.

For vacancies in the cadetships allotted to the honor graduates of the "honor schools," *one candidate* may be nominated each year before September 1st from each school. In case the total number of candidates so nominated is not equal to three times the number of vacancies, the War Department will assign additional appointments among the schools to complete this total.

For vacancies in the cadetships allotted to the enlisted men of the National Guard, the candidates will be apportioned as near as practicable among the States, Districts, and Territories according to their enlisted strength. With the exception of the candidates from the District of Columbia, they will be selected by the Governors from successful competitors in a *preliminary examination* held between January 1st and January 15th of each year, such examination to be of a scope and nature similar to the regular examination for entrance to the United States Military Academy. The candidates from the National Guard of the District of Columbia will be similarly selected by the Commanding General of that organization.

The candidates nominated for the cadetships allotted to the enlisted men of the regular army shall not exceed three times the number of existing vacancies and shall be equitably distributed among the

Territorial Departments by the War Department. If the number of applications in any Department exceed the share allotted to it by the War Department, the candidates in such Department will be chosen from the successful competitors in a *preliminary examination* held between January 1st and January 15th, such examination to be of a scope and nature similar to the regular examination for entrance to the United States Military Academy.[6]

Each candidate designated to take the regular examination for admission to the United States Military Academy will receive from the War Department a letter of appointment, and he must appear for examination at the time and place designated therein.[7]

Fitness for admission will be determined as prescribed in the Regulations, United States Military Academy.

REGULAR EXAMINATION OF CANDIDATES

Examinations of candidates will be competitive in the following classes, and will be the regular examination for entrance to the United States Military Academy:

(1) Candidates from the United States at Large, other than honor graduates of honor schools.

(2) Candidates from the United States at Large, who are honor graduates of honor schools.

(3) Candidates from the enlisted men of the National Guard.

(4) Candidates from the enlisted men of the Regular Army.

The Filipino candidates selected for appointment, unless otherwise notified by the War Department, shall appear for mental and physical examination on the second Tuesday in January of each year before a board of Army officers to be convened at such place in the Philippine Islands as the commanding general of the Philippine Department may designate.

Admission by Examinations.—On the third Tuesday in March of each year candidates selected for appointment shall appear for mental and physical examination before boards of Army officers to be convened at such places as the War Department may designate.

Each candidate must show by examination that he is well versed in algebra, to include quadratic equations and progressions, and in plane geometry, English grammar, composition and literature, descriptive and physical geography, and general and United States history, as explained in the circular of notification.

Admission by Certificate.—The Academic Board will consider and *may accept* in lieu of the regular mental examination:

(1) A properly attested certificate (Form I) that the candidate is a regularly enrolled student in good standing without condition in a university, college, or technical school accredited by the United States Military Academy, provided that the entrance requirements of the course he is pursuing require proficiency in subjects amounting to not less than 14

units of the list given below.

If attendance at college extends over a semester, a full record of academic work at the college, giving subjects taken and grades attained in each, must accompany the certificate; if attendance at college extends over less than a semester and the candidate was admitted to college by certificate, a certificate (Form II) from the preparatory school giving a full record of studies taken and grades attained must accompany the college certificate. If a scrutiny of the certificate submitted shows low grades, the certificate will be rejected.

A certificate indicating enrollment in or admission to an institution at any other time than that specified in the college register for regular admission or enrollment will be not accepted.

(2) A properly attested certificate (Form II) that the candidate has graduated from a preparatory school or public high school accredited by the United States Military Academy, provided that he has in his school work shown proficiency in subjects amounting to not less than 14 units of the list given below.

If a scrutiny of the certificate submitted shows evidence of low grades or of graduation at an irregular date, the certificate will be rejected.

(3) A properly attested certificate (Form III) from the College Entrance Examination Board that the candidate has shown proficiency in the examinations set by the board in subjects amounting to 14 units from the list given below. If a scrutiny of the certificate submitted shows low grades, the certificate will be rejected.

The list of subjects and the corresponding weights in units is as follows:

(*a*) REQUIRED.

Every certificate must show evidence of proficiency in the following subjects.

		Units.
Mathematics, A1		1
Mathematics, A2		½
Mathematics, C		1
English, A		2
English, B		1
History, A }		
History, B }	any two	2
History, C }		
History, D }		
		7½

(*b*) OPTIONAL.

The remaining 6½ units may be supplied from among the following subjects, and no others.

	Units.
Mathematics, B	½

Mathematics, D		½
Mathematics, E		½
Mathematics, F		½
History, A }	Any not submitted among required subjects	1
History, B }		1
History, C }		1
History, D }		1
Latin, 1		1
Latin, 2		1
Latin, 3		2
Latin, 4		1
Latin, 5		1
Greek, A1		½
Greek, A2		½
Greek, B		1
Greek, C		1
Greek, F		1
French, A		2
French, B	Either one but not both	1
French, BC		2
German, A		2
German, B	Either one but not both	1
German, BC		2
Spanish		2
Physics		1
Chemistry		1

Biology	1
Botany	1
Physiology	1
Physical geography	1
Drawing	1
	35

The definition of unit and of the ground covered by the designated subjects is that of the College Entrance Examination Board. Credits must correspond to the unit values of the respective subjects. Greater credit than indicated will not be allowed; less credit will be understood as evidence that the entire subject has not been completed.

Certificates should be submitted not later than February 15th. A certificate received between February 15th and the examination will receive consideration, but in view of the short time left to the Academic Board to investigate its value, no assurance will be given that such certificate can be acted on in time to exempt the candidate from the mental examination.

Candidates who submit certificates on a date which does not allow the Academic Board sufficient time to investigate its value and notify them regarding the final action thereon prior to the day set for the examination, should proceed with the regular examination.

Candidates who are informed that their certificates have been accepted must present themselves at the

regular time and place as herein prescribed, for physical examination.

A certificate which is accepted as satisfactory for one examination will be regarded as satisfactory for any other examination which may be set for entrance with the same class.

Any certificate accepted for one class, and presented for a succeeding class, should be accompanied with a full statement of the candidate's educational work in the interim, and both certificate and statement will be subject to careful scrutiny by the Academic Board. (Par. 65, Regs., U. S. M. A.)

All necessary papers, **including a set of blank certificate forms**, are furnished to each duly nominated candidate by The Adjutant General of the Army.

Note.—Certificates will be accepted only from candidates appointed from States at large, Congressional districts, Territories, and the District of Columbia.

Certificates may be accepted for admission of candidates from the Regular Army and National Guard in the same manner as they are accepted for candidates nominated by Congressmen, except that acceptable certificates entitle the candidate to appointment only in case the authorized number of vacancies for that year are not filled by the regular examination.

Date of Admission.—Candidates who fully conform to the requirements set forth in the preceding paragraphs, and who report in person to the

Superintendent before 10:30 A.M. the second day, Sunday excepted, following the date of regular graduation, shall be admitted as cadets of the United States Military Academy, and shall receive their warrants as soon as practicable.

Engagement to Serve.—Immediately after reporting to the Superintendent for admission and before receiving their warrants of appointment candidates are required to sign in the presence of the Superintendent, or of some officer deputed by him, engagements for service in the following form:

I, —— ——, of the State (or Territory) of ——, aged —— years, ——months, do hereby engage (with consent of my parent or guardian) that from the date of my admission as a cadet of the United States Military Academy I will serve in the Army of the United States for eight years unless sooner discharged by competent authority.

In the presence of —— ——.

In the case of the Filipino cadets the engagement shall be made to serve in the Philippine Scouts. (See Sec. 1321, R. S.)

Oath of Allegiance.—Each cadet shall, previous to his admission to the academy, take and subscribe an oath or affirmation in the following form:

I, —— ——, do solemnly swear that I will support the Constitution of the United States and bear true allegiance to the National Government; that I will maintain and defend the sovereignty of the United States paramount to any and all allegiance, sovereignty, or fealty I may owe to any State, county,

or country whatsoever, and that I will at all times obey the legal orders of my superior officers and the rules and articles governing the Armies of the United States. (Sec. 1320, R. S.)

Sworn to and subscribed at —— this — day of ——, nineteen hundred and —, before me.

Qualifications.—No candidate shall be admitted who is under 17 or over 22 years of age or less than 5 feet 4 inches in height at the age of 17, or 5 feet 5 inches in height at the age of 18 and upward, or who is deformed or afflicted with any disease or infirmity which would render him unfit for the military service or who has, at the time of presenting himself, any disorder of an infectious or immoral character. Candidates must be unmarried.

Each candidate must on reporting at West Point present a certificate showing successful vaccination within one year; or a certificate of two vaccinations made at least a month apart, within three months.

Note.—Candidates are eligible for admission from the day they are 17 until the day they become 22 years of age, on which latter day they are not eligible.

Each candidate designated as principal or alternate for appointment as cadet at the Military Academy should ascertain as soon as practicable whether or not he has any physical defect that would disqualify him for admission to the academy or any that should be corrected by treatment previous to presenting himself for examination. For this purpose he should immediately cause himself to be examined by his family physician, and, if he desires, also by an Army surgeon at the nearest military post. Such an

examination should enable the candidate to decide whether to devote the time and possible expense which may be necessary for preparation for the entrance examination or to relinquish his appointment.

The presentation by a candidate of his letter of conditional appointment, or the presentation by a *prospective* candidate of a letter signed by a Member of Congress stating that the bearer is to be a candidate for cadet appointment and requesting that he be physically examined, will be sufficient authority for an Army surgeon at any military post to make the desired physical examination. Upon completion of this examination, the Army surgeon will inform the candidate of the result, and, in case a disability be found, whether such disability is believed to be permanent and disqualifying for military service or whether it is believed to be of a temporary or curable nature. The examination is to be regarded as preliminary only, and in no manner to affect the decision of the regular medical examining board.

CHARACTER OF EXAMINATIONS

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

The physical examination is conducted under the following instructions prepared by the Surgeon General of the Army: Candidates who, upon reporting, present evidence that they have been excused from the mental examination under the provisions of the certificate privilege, or as the result of having qualified mentally at a previous

examination, are usually examined physically as soon as possible after reporting and are not required to wait until the schedule of mental examinations has been completed. The physical examination of all candidates taking the mental examination begins on the fourth day and is continued daily until completed.

Hearing must be normal in both ears.

Vision as determined by the official test types must not fall below 20/40 in either eye. If below 20/20, it must be correctable to 20/20 by proper glasses.

In the record of all examinations the acuity of vision without glasses, and also with glasses when the acuity is less than 20/20, will be given for each eye separately; in the latter case the correction will also be noted.

Hyperopia with vision less than 20/20 and myopia or astigmatism, either hyperopic or myopic, with vision less than 20/40, are causes for rejection.

Squint uncorrectable by glasses (not prisms) is a cause for rejection.

Color blindness, red, green, or violet, is cause for rejection.

The foregoing requirements apply to eyes from disease, either acute or chronic. All lesions of the fundus, except those due to simple myopia, lesions not progressive in character, whether old or of recent origin, are causes for rejection.

A certificate from a competent oculist may be accepted at the option of the examining board, as

evidence of freedom from lesions of the fundus.

Teeth.—A candidate must have at least 12 of the 20 double teeth in serviceable condition, so placed that 6 of them are "opposed" by 6 others. Where not all of the third molars have erupted and there are none opposed, 8 serviceable double teeth must be present, so placed that 4 are opposed by 4 others. Where there are two opposed third molars, the requirements will be at least 6 double teeth opposed by 6 others. Well crowned teeth are considered as good teeth. Teeth containing large cavities or exposed nerves are considered as cause for rejection, but a candidate with unsound teeth may be accepted subject to the condition of having cavities filled and teeth put in satisfactory shape before the date set for his entrance to West Point.

The following are causes of disqualification if found to exist to such a degree as would immediately or at no very distant period impair the efficiency of the candidate:

1. Feeble constitution; unsound health from whatever cause; indications of former disease, glandular swellings, or other symptoms of scrofula.

2. Chronic cutaneous affections, especially of the scalp.

3. Severe injuries of the bones of the head; convulsions.

4. Impaired vision, from whatever cause; inflammatory affections of the

eyelids; immobility or irregularity of the iris; fistula lachrymalis, etc.

5. Deafness; copious discharge from the ears.

6. Impediment of speech.

7. Want of due capacity of the chest, and any other indication of a liability to a pulmonic disease.

8. Impaired or inadequate efficiency of one or both of the superior extremities on account of fractures, especially of the clavicle, contraction of a joint, deformity, etc.

9. An unusual excurvature or incurvature of the spine.

10. Hernia.

11. A varicose state of the veins of the scrotum or spermatic cord (when large), hydrocele, hemorrhoids, fistulas.

12. Impaired or inadequate efficiency of one or both of the inferior extremities on account of varicose veins, fractures, malformation (flat feet, etc.), lameness, contraction, unequal length, bunions, overlying or supernumerary toes, etc.

13. Ulcers or unsound cicatrices of

ulcers likely to break out afresh.

The requirements of the following tables of physical proportions are *minimum for growing youths* and are for the guidance of medical officers in connection with the other data of the examination, a consideration of all of which should determine the candidate's physical eligibility. Mere fulfilment of the requirements of the standard tables does not determine eligibility, while on the other hand no departure below the standard should be allowed unless upon the unanimous recommendation of the medical examining board for excellent reasons clearly stated in each case.

The physical requirements should be those of the age at the birthday nearest the time of the examination. Fractions greater than one-half inch will be considered as an additional inch of height, but candidates 17 years old must be at least 64 inches, and those 18 years and upward at least 65 inches in height.

TABLE FOR PHYSICAL PROPORTION FOR HEIGHT, WEIGHT, AND CHEST MEASUREMENT

Age.	*Height, inches.*	*Weight, pounds.,*	*Chest measurement expiration, inches.*	*Chest mobility, inches.*
	64	110	29	2
	65	112	29¼	2

	66	114	29½	2
	67	116	29¾	2
	68	119	30	2½
	69	122	30¼	2½
	70	125	30½	2½
	71	128	30¾	2½
18 yrs.	65	117	30¼	2
	66	119	30½	2
	67	121	30¾	2
	68	124	31	2½
	69	127	31¼	2½
	70	130	31½	2½
	71	133	31¾	2½
	72	136	32	3
19 yrs.	65	121	30¾	2
	66	123	31	2
	67	125	31¼	2
	68	129	31½	2½
	69	133	31¾	2½
	70	137	32	2½
	71	141	32¼	2½
	72	145	32½	3
	73	149	32¾	3
20 yrs.	65	122	31	2
	66	124	31¼	2
	67	126	31½	2
	68	130	31¾	2½
	69	134	32	2½
	70	138	32¼	2½

	71	142	32½	2½
	72	146	32¾	3
	73	150	33	3
	74	154	33¼	3½
21 yrs.	65	123	31¼	2
	66	125	31½	2
	67	127	31¾	2
	68	132	32	2½
	69	137	32¾	2½
	70	142	32½	2½
	71	147	32¾	2½
	72	152	33	3
	73	157	33¼	3
	74	162	33½	3½
	75	167	33¾	3½
22 yrs.	65	125	31½	2
	66	127	31¾	2
	67	129	32	2
	68	134	32¼	2½
	69	139	32½	2½
	70	144	32¾	2½
	71	149	33	2½
	72	154	33¼	3
	73	159	33½	3
	74	164	33¾	3½
	75	169	34	3½
	76	174	34¼	4

The following is a list of the Army posts at which the

examination is usually held:

Fort Banks, Mass.
Fort Slocum, N. Y.
Washington Barracks, D. C.
Jackson Barracks, New Orleans, La.
Fort Shafter, Honolulu, Hawaii.
Columbus Barracks, Ohio.
Fort Williams, Maine.
Fort St. Michaels, Alaska.
Fort Sill, Okla.
Fort Leavenworth, Kans.
Jefferson Barracks, Mo.
Fort Ethan Allen, Vt.
Fort Dade, Fla.

Fort Logan H. Roots, Ark.
Fort Logan, Colo.
Fort Sam Houston, Tex.
Presidio of San Francisco, Cal.
Corozal, Canal Zone.
Fort McPherson, Ga.
Fort Snelling, Minn.
Fort Sheridan, Ill.
Vancouver Barracks, Wash.
Fort Bliss, Texas.
Fort Wm. H. Seward, Alaska.
Fort Rosecrans, Cal.

MENTAL EXAMINATION

The examination takes place as follows, viz.:

1st Day.—Blank for personal and school history to be filled out by all who report for examination, 11 a.m. to 12, noon, 1 hour.

History, 1 to 5 p.m., 4 hours.

2d Day.— Algebra, 9 a.m. to 1 p.m., 4 hours.

Geography, 2 to 5 p.m., 3 hours.

3d Day.— Geometry, 9 a.m. to 1 p.m., 4 hours.

English Grammar, Composition, and Literature, 1:30 to 5:30 p.m., 4 hours.

Every candidate who reports is required to fill out, in the most careful manner, the personal and school history sheet and the autograph and official notification address blanks. The fact that a candidate may be reporting for the physical examination only, does not by any means exempt him from accomplishing these blanks, as the information they contain is vitally necessary for the permanent and statistical records of the Military Academy.

The candidate is given all assistance needed to insure the proper filling out of these papers.

Algebra.—Candidates will be required to pass a satisfactory examination in that portion of *algebra* which includes the following range of subjects: Definitions and notation; the fundamental laws; the fundamental operations, viz.: Addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division; factoring; highest common factor; lowest common multiple; fractions,

simple and complex; simple or linear equations with one unknown quantity; simultaneous simple or linear equations with two or more unknown quantities; graphical representation and solution of linear equations with two unknowns; involution, including the formation of the squares and cubes of polynomials; binomial theorem with positive integral exponents; evolution, including the extraction of the square and cube roots of polynomials and of numbers; theory of exponents, radicals, including reduction and fundamental operations, rationalization, equations involving radicals; operations with imaginary numbers; quadratic equations; equations of quadratic form; simultaneous quadratic equations; ratio and proportion; arithmetical and geometrical progressions. Candidates will be required to solve problems involving any of the principles or methods contained in the foregoing subjects.

The following questions were used at a recent examination:

1. (*a*) Simplify $[(x - y)^2 + 6xy] - [(x^2 + 2xy) - \{x^2 - [2xy - (4xy - y^2)]\} - (-x^2 - 2xy)]$.

   (*b*) Factor (1) $a^9b^9 + 64c^6$ (2) $x^2 - y^2 - 2y - 1$ (3) $x^3 - 3x^2 + 4$.

2. Solve $\sqrt{((4/x^2) + 5)} - \sqrt{((4/x^2) - 5)} = 2$. Prove that your answers are correct.

3. How many terms will there be in the expansion of $(a^{1/10} + b^{1/5} \times 15)$ by the binomial formula?
   Write the 6th term in the simplest form.
   What other term will have the same coefficient?

Write down this term and simplify it.

4. A number of workmen, who receive the same wages, earn together a certain sum. Had there been 7 more workmen, and had each one received 25 cents more, their joint earnings would have increased by $18.65. Had there been 4 fewer workmen, and had each one received 15 cents less, their joint earnings would have decreased by $9.20. How many workmen are there, and how much does each one receive?

5. (*a*) Find the value of $5x^3 + 2x^2 - 3x - 1$ when $x = 1 - \sqrt{(-4)}$

   (*b*) Simplify $(5 \times \sqrt{(x^{4/3})})^{-3/2}$

6. Two trains run toward each other from A and B, respectively, and meet at a point which is 15 miles farther from A than it is from B. After the trains meet, it takes the first train 2⅔ hours to run to B, and the second 3⅜ hours to run to A. How far is it from A to B?

7. Solve
$$\begin{cases} (1/a + 1/b)x + (1/a - 1/b)y = 4 \\ \\ x/(a + b) + y/(a - b) = 2 \end{cases}$$

8. (*a*) Deduce a test for finding when the roots of the equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ are: 1º real and unequal; 2º real and equal; 3º imaginary; 4º numerically equal with contrary signs.

   (*b*) Apply the tests to find the nature of the roots

of the equations

$1º\ 3x2 + 4x - 10 = 0$

$2º\ 5x2 + 6 = 0$

9. Given a square whose side is 2. The middle points of its adjacent sides are joined by straight lines forming a second square inscribed in the first. In the same manner, a third square is inscribed in the second, a fourth in the third, and so on indefinitely. Find the sum of the perimeters of all the squares.

Substitute for any of the above.—A person has $6,500, which he divides into two portions and lends at different rates of interest, so that the two portions produce equal returns. If the first portion had been lent at the second rate of interest, it would have produced $180; and if the second portion had been lent at the first rate of interest, it would have produced $245. Find the rates of interest.

Plane Geometry.—Candidates will be required to give accurate definitions of the terms used in *plane geometry*, to demonstrate any proposition of plane geometry as given in the ordinary text-books and to solve simple geometrical problems either by a construction or by an application of algebra.

The following questions were used at a recent

examination:

1. Theorem: The three medians of any triangle intersect in a common point which is at two-thirds of the distance from each vertex to the middle of the opposite side.

2. Theorem: If two triangles have their three sides respectively equal, the triangles are equal in all respects.

3. (*a*) How many circles can be drawn tangent to three given straight lines? (*b*) Problem: To draw a circle through a given point and tangent to two given straight lines.

4. Theorem: If two parallel right lines be divided into corresponding parts, proportional each to each, and straight lines be drawn through the corresponding points of division, these straight lines will pass through a common point.

5. Exercise: Find the locus of all points, the sum of the squares of the distances of any one of which from two fixed points is equal to a given square.

6. Problem: Given two circles, to construct a third circle equivalent to their difference.

7. Exercise: If the radius of a circle is 5, find the area of the segment subtended by the side of a regular hexagon.

8. Theorem: The areas of two triangles which have an angle of the one equal to an angle of the other, are to each other as the products of

the sides including those angles.

9. Problem: Through a given point on one side of a triangle to draw a right line which shall divide the triangle into two equivalent areas.

Substitute for any one of the above.—(*a*) Define *commensurable quantities*; *incommensurable quantities*. Give example of each. (*b*) Theorem: In the same circle or equal circles, two angles at the centre have the same ratio as their intercepted arcs (whether commensurable or incommensurable).

English Grammar.—Candidates must have a good knowledge of *English grammar*; they must be able to define the terms used therein; to define the parts of speech; to give inflections, including declension, conjugation, and comparison; to give the corresponding masculine and feminine gender nouns; to give and apply the ordinary rules of syntax.

They must be able to parse correctly any ordinary sentence; giving the subject of each verb, the governing of each objective case, the word for which each pronoun stands or to which it refers, the words between which each preposition shows the relation, precisely what each conjunction and each relative pronoun connects, what each adjective and adverb qualifies or limits, the construction of each infinitive, and generally to show a good knowledge of the function of each word in the sentence.

They must be able to correct in sentences or extracts any ordinary grammatical errors.

It is not required that any particular textbook shall be followed; but the definitions, parsing, and corrections must be in accordance with good usage and common sense.

The following questions indicate the character of the examination:

1. (*a*) He comes, the herald of a noisy world. (*b*) Next anger rushed, his eyes on fire. (*c*) Get on your nightgown, lest occasion call us and show us to be watchers. (*d*) Hark! Hark! the lark at heaven's gate sings. (*e*) Why do you stay so long, my lords of France? (*f*) Go you before to Gloucester with these letters. (*g*) Society has been called the happiness of life. (*h*) The guardsman defended himself bravely. (*i*) They that reverence too much old times are but a scorn to the new. (*j*) I will bring you certain news from Shrewsbury.

In the above sentences pick out the following grammatical constructions. (Indicate the number of the sentence and write the word or words which answer the question.)

Imperative mood. Abstract noun. Transitive verb. Two relative pronouns. Noun in apposition. Verb in subjunctive mood. Adverb of manner. Relative pronoun. Indirect object. Interjection.

2. Write a simple sentence containing a compound

subject. Write a simple sentence containing a compound predicate. Write a complex sentence containing an adjective clause. Write a complex sentence containing an adverbial clause of manner. Write a sentence containing a preposition with a compound object. Write a sentence containing an adverb clause of time. Write a sentence containing a noun (or substitute) clause used as the subject of the sentence. Write a complex sentence containing an adverb clause of place. Write a sentence containing an adjective phrase, and an adverb phrase. Write a sentence containing a verb in the passive voice.

3. Write sentences containing the following: The preterite (or past) tense (active voice) of the verb "choose." The perfect tense (active voice) of the verb "swim." The pluperfect (or past perfect) tense (active voice) of the verb "burst." The future perfect tense (active voice) of the verb "eat." The perfect tense (active voice) of the verb "know." The present participle of the verb "lie." The perfect infinite of the verb "study." The perfect participle of the verb "knock." The future tense, passive voice, of the verb "defeat." The future perfect tense, passive voice, of the verb "pay."

4. In the passage below, indicate the gender of all the nouns and pronouns by the following device: Underscore once those that are masculine; twice those that are feminine; thrice all those that are neither.

"The bride kissed the goblet, the knight took it up.
He quaffed off the wine, and he threw down the cup,
She looked down to blush, and she looked up to sigh,
With a smile on her lips and a tear in her eye.
He took her soft hand ere her mother could bar,—
'Now tread we a measure!' said young Lochinvar.
So stately her form and so lovely her face,
That never a hall such a galliard did grace;
While her mother did fret, and her father did fume,
And the bridegroom stood dangling his bonnet and plume;
And the bride-maidens whispered, "Twere better by far,
To have matched our fair cousin with young Lochinvar.'"

5. Write sentences containing the following: An auxiliary verb. The comparative of "recent." The superlative of "bad." The plural of "lily." The masculine of "witch." An intransitive verb. A collective noun. The comparative of "lazy." The plural of "shelf." The plural of "ruby."

6. Parse the words in italics in the following sentences: "Some soils, *like* the rocky tract *called* the Estabrooke Country in *my* neighbourhood, is so suited to the apple, that it will grow *faster* in *them without any* care, *than* it *will* in many places with any amount of *care*."—Henry D. Thoreau.

7. Correct all errors in the following: The man who committed the murder was hung. Who can this letter be from? It is me that he fears.

The red rose smells sweetly, but the yellow one does not smell so good. He asked if either of the men could identify their own clothing.

8. Punctuate and capitalize the following: it was old dr parr who said or sighed in his last illness oh if i can only live till strawberries come the old scholar imagined that if he could weather it till then the berries would carry him through no doubt he had turned from the drugs and the nostrums or from the hateful food to the memory of the pungent penetrating and unspeakably fresh quality of the strawberry with the deepest longing the strawberry is always the hope of the invalid and sometimes no doubt his salvation it is the first and finest relish among the fruits and well merits dr botelers memorable saying that doubtless god could have made a better berry but doubtless god never did john burroughs.

English Composition and English Literature.—Candidate will be required:

1. By the writing of short themes on subjects chosen by themselves within limits set by the examination paper, to prove (*a*) their ability to spell, capitalize, and punctuate, and (*b*) their mastery of the elementary principles of composition, including paragraphing and sentence structure.

2. To give evidence of intelligent acquaintance with

three plays of Shakespeare—one comedy, one history, and one tragedy—*The Merchant of Venice*, *Henry V*, and *Macbeth* being especially recommended.

3. To exhibit a fair knowledge of the history of English literature and of the names of the most prominent authors, and of the names of their principal works.

The general character and scope of the examination are indicated by the following:

1. In a few paragraphs (about 250 words) tell the most important facts about the life and works of any *one* of the following authors: Robert Burns, John Milton, John Keats, Edgar Allan Poe, Alfred Tennyson, Charles Dickens.

2. In a paragraph (about 250 words) discuss the Victorian period in English literature, paying attention to the following points: (*a*) the characteristics of the literature, (*b*) the chief writers, both in prose and poetry.

3. In a few paragraphs (about 250 words) discuss the Puritan period in English literature, telling what is meant by the term, the object and results of the Puritan movement, the chief writers with their works, and the main characteristics of the literature.

4. Elective question (may be chosen in place of either 2 or 3). Write a few paragraphs (250 words) on the characteristics and importance of the works of the Concord writers, Emerson, Hawthorne, and Thoreau, mentioning the

chief works of each.

5. Write two compositions of about 200 words each selecting your subjects from the following list: (*a*) The story of the chase. (Lady of the Lake—Scott.) (*b*) Silas Marner's Early Life. (Silas Marner—George Eliot.) (*c*) The Story of Jessica. (Merchant of Venice—Shakespeare.) (*d*) The Character of Brutus. (Julius Caesar—Shakespeare.) (*e*) The Story of Ida and the Prince. (The Princess—Tennyson.) (*f*) The Trial of Rebecca. (Ivanhoe—Scott.) (*g*) The Murder of Duncan. (Macbeth—Shakespeare.) (*h*) Character Sketch of the Ancient Mariner. (The Ancient Mariner—Coleridge.) (*i*) Threshing Day on a Western Farm. (*j*) The Village Drug Store. (*k*) Along the Wharves in a Seaport Town. (*l*) An Irrigated Farm. (*m*) A Cotton Mill. (*n*) An Accident.

Geography.—Candidates will be required to pass a satisfactory examination in *descriptive geography* and the elements of *physical geography*. A preponderance of weight is attached to a knowledge of the geography of the United States.

In descriptive geography of the United States, candidates should be thoroughly informed as to its general features and boundaries; adjacent oceans, seas, bays, gulfs, sounds, straits, and islands; lakes, the location and extent of mountain ranges; the sources, directions, and terminations of the important rivers, the names of their principal

tributaries, and at what points, if any, these rivers break through highlands on their way to the ocean; the water routes of communication from one part of the country to another; the location and termination of important railroad lines; the boundaries of the several States and Territories and their order along the coasts, frontiers, and principal rivers; the location and boundaries of the island possessions; and the names and locations of the capitals and other important cities of the several States, Territories, and island possessions.

In short, the knowledge should be so complete that a clear mental picture of the whole of the United States is impressed on the mind of the candidate.

In descriptive geography of other countries, candidates should be familiar with the continental areas and grand divisions of water; the earth's surface; the large bodies of water which in part or wholly surround the grand divisions of the land; the capes, from what part they project and into what waters; the principal peninsulas, location, and by what waters embraced; the parts connected by an isthmus; the principal islands, locations, and surrounding waters; the seas, gulfs, and bays, the coasts they indent, and the waters to which they are subordinate; the straits, the lands they separate, and the waters they connect; the locations of the principal lakes, the locations, boundaries, capitals and principal cities of the political divisions of the world.

In physical geography, candidates should be familiar with the relief of the earth's surface; the principal mountain systems, the river systems and watersheds; the coastal and lake plains; and the influence of

climate, soil, mineral deposits, and other physical features on the resources, industries, commercial relations, and development of a country and its people, especially of the United States.

The following questions indicate the character of the examination:

1. Define. (*a*) Geography, (*b*) Physical Geography, (*c*) strait, (*d*) isthmus, (*e*) isotherm.

2. In respect of climate, into what zones is the earth's surface divided? Name the circles separating these zones from one another. In what zone are the Philippines?

3. (*a*) What and where is the International Date Line? (*b*) In going from San Francisco to Manila is a day lost or gained? Give reasons for answer.

4. How many "times" has the United States! What are they?

5. What waters surround the United States?

6. Is it possible to go from Duluth to Detroit by water? If so, what bodies of water would be passed through?

7. Name the larger islands of the Philippines, and of the Hawaiian Group, respectively. On what island is Manila? Honolulu? Iloilo?

8. Name two great coal regions of the United States.

9. What is (*a*) the most northern State of the United States? (*b*) the most southern? (*c*) the most

eastern? (*d*) the most western?

10. Which of the United States has the longest coast line?

11. Where is the Mohawk Valley?

12. Bound—Michigan, Kentucky, Connecticut.

13. Locate accurately the following cities—El Paso, Albany, Zamboanga, Panama, San Antonio, Kalamazoo.

14. Name the transcontinental railways west of the Mississippi in order from north to south.

15. Name the countries of Central America. Which one of these borders on Mexico?

16. Name in order, beginning at the Isthmus of Panama, the countries of South America that touch on the Caribbean Sea and the Atlantic Ocean.

17. The meridian through Atlanta, Georgia, intersects what South American Republics? Is the continent of South America, as a whole, east or west of the United States?

18. What two countries of South America have no sea coast?

19. A vessel goes from London, England, to San Francisco by the Suez Canal. Through what waters does it pass?

20. What waters connect the Black Sea with the Mediterranean? The Gulf of Aden with the

Red Sea?

21. Where does the Danube rise? through what countries does it flow? and where does it empty?

22. What three rivers flow north into the Arctic from Siberia?

23. What mountains lie between France and Spain? Between Tibet and India?

24. Name in order in a clockwise direction the countries bordering on the Mediterranean.

25. Where is—Mount Shasta, Popocatepetl, Chimborazo, Everest, Apo, Fujiyama, Blanc, Mayon.

26. Where and what is—Mukden, Valdivostok, Liberia, Melilla, The Celebes.

27.—Locate—Elba, Saint Thomas, Cape Race, Hankow, Formosa, Bonin Islands, Juraez, Zanzibar, Colon, Volga River, Elbe River, Cebu, Seville, Andalusia, Zaragoza, Macedonia, Nepaul, Bogota, Beirut, Malta, Macao, Dublin.

28. Name the capitals respectively of—Afghanistan, Portugal, Nebraska, Vermont, French Indo-China, Philippine Islands, Montenegro, Georgia, Oregon, Roumania, Persia, Florida, Java.

History.—Candidates must be thoroughly familiar with such material as is contained in good high school textbooks on the subject (*a*) of the History of the United States, and (*b*) of the History of Europe from the Fall of Constantinople (1453) to the outbreak of the French Revolution (1789).

In history of the United States, the examination will include questions concerning early discoveries and settlements; the forms of government in the Colonies; the causes, leading events, and results of wars; important events in the political and economic history of the Nation since its foundation.

In history of Europe from 1453 to 1789, special emphasis will be laid upon the political and social development in France, Prussia, and England.

The following questions indicate the character of the examination:

European History (1453-1789).

1. Describe political conditions during the latter half of the fifteenth century in what is now Germany.

2. What countries were ruled by Charles V of Spain at the height of his power?

3. Why was Luther summoned to the Diet of Worms? What was done at this Diet?

4. Who was Melanchthon? What was the Religious Peace of Augsburg? What was its importance?

5. What was the Council of Trent? Over how long a period did its meetings extend? What were the important acts of this Council?

6. What ruler was instrumental in separating England from Roman Catholic influence? How was this separation accomplished? Describe two acts of Parliament important in this connection.

7. Outline the causes of Elizabeth's quarrel with Mary Queen of Scots. State its political importance and its results.

8. Under what circumstances during Elizabeth's reign did England come into conflict with Spain? What event marked the crisis of this conflict?

9. State the nature, causes, dates, and leaders of the Puritan Reformation.

10. Describe the important acts of Parliament passed in the reign of Charles II to regulate the religious situation.

11. Describe the court and court life in France in the time of Louis XIV. Name five prominent men connected with Louis XIV's court.

12. What part did Gustavus Adolphus and Richelieu play in the Thirty Years' War? How may we reconcile Richelieu's political acts with his religious convictions?

13. What nations were engaged in the War of the Spanish Succession? What issues were at stake? What were the important provisions

of the Peace of Utrecht (1713)?

14. What was the revolution of 1688 in England? How was it accomplished?

15. What is meant by the cabinet system of government? Account for the advance of cabinet government in the reigns of George I and George II.

16. For what qualities and what acts was the Great Elector (Frederick William of Prussia) noted?

17. State the cause and the result of the first war between Frederick the Great and Maria Theresa. Name two famous battles of the Seven Years' War in which Frederick the Great was victorious.

18. State the results of the Seven Years' War for France according to the provisions of the Treaty of Paris (1763).

19. Why were Frederick the Great, Catherine II of Russia, and Joseph II of Austria called "enlightened despots"? Describe the work of any one of these rulers.

20. Outline two of the fundamental causes for the unrest in France during the early years of the reign of Louis XVI.

---

1. State concisely the achievements of—(*a*) De Narvaez; (*b*) De Soto; (*c*) Hudson; (*d*) La

Salle.

2. (*a*) Where and when was the first permanent English settlement in America made? (*b*) What arrangement was made for the government of this settlement?

3. (*a*) When and where did the first colonial assembly in America meet? (*b*) What was Bacon's Rebellion? (*c*) When and where was the first permanent English settlement in New England established?

4. (*a*) What brought the first settlers to Maryland? (*b*) Who was their leader?

5. (*a*) What was the immediate cause of the Revolutionary War? (*b*) What were "writs of assistance"? (*c*) What was the "Mutiny Act"?

6. (*a*) When and where did the first Continental Congress meet? (*b*) What was accomplished by this Congress? (*c*) Name the original thirteen colonies.

7. (*a*) Who were the principal leaders in the two battles of Saratoga? (*b*) What were the effects on the American people of these battles? (*c*) What was the Wyoming Massacre?

8. (*a*) What European country was the first to acknowledge the American independence? (*b*) In what ways did this country aid in bringing the Revolutionary War to a successful close?

9. State the significance of the following in United

States history: (*a*) Shays' Rebellion; (*b*) Steuben; (*c*) Alien and sedition laws; (*d*) Kosciusko.

10. (*a*) What were the causes of the war with England in 1812? (*b*) What treaty ended this struggle? (*c*) Who was President of the United States during this war?

11. By what means, from whom, and during whose Presidency were the following territories obtained for the United States? (*a*) Louisiana, (*b*) Florida, (*c*) Alaska.

12. (*a*) What was the "Spoils System"? (*b*) What was the Nullification ordinance passed by South Carolina in 1832?

13. Discuss briefly the nature and importance of the following: (*a*) The Wilmot Proviso. (*b*) The Dred Scott Decision. (*c*) The Fugitive Slave Law.

14. Name the commanders and the results of the following battles: (*a*) Vicksburg, (*b*) Fredericksburg, (*c*) Cold Harbor.

15. Name the Presidents of the United States who have had a second term of office.

16. (*a*) What various causes underlay the declaration of war against Spain? (*b*) What important battles on land and sea were fought during the Spanish-American War? (*c*) What treaty ended this war and what territory was ceded to the United States as a result of it?

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

All cadets are examined physically in May of each year, and those found physically disqualified to continue with the course, or, in case of the first class, for commission in the Army, are discharged.

VACATIONS AND LEAVES OF ABSENCE

Academic duties are suspended from the completion of the June examinations until the end of August. During this period cadets live in camp and are engaged in military duties and exercises and in receiving practical instruction in military and other subjects. Academic duties are also suspended from December 24th until January 2d, except for those undergoing examination. All duties and exercises, as far as practicable, are suspended on New Year's Day, February 22d, May 30th, July 4th, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas Day.

Cadets of the first, second, and third classes not undergoing examination are allowed short leaves at Christmas, if their conduct during the preceding year has been satisfactory. Excepting these short leaves for good conduct, cadets are allowed but one leave of absence during the four years' course. This leave is granted to those cadets who have successfully completed the third-class course of study, and extends from the middle of June to the 28th of August.

PAY OF CADETS

The pay of a cadet is $600 per year and one ration per day, or commutation therefor at 30 cents per day. The total is $746.00 to commence with his admission to the academy. The actual and necessary traveling expenses of candidates from their homes to the Military Academy are credited to their accounts *after* their admission as cadets.

No cadet is permitted to receive money, or any other supplies, from his parents, or from any person whomsoever, without the sanction of the Superintendent. A *most rigid* observance of this regulation is urged upon all parents and guardians, as its violation would make distinctions between cadets which it is the especial desire to avoid; the pay of a cadet is sufficient for his support.

Candidates are authorized to bring with them the following articles: Hairbrush, nailbrush, toothbrush, shoebrush, comb, 8 drawers (summer), 12 handkerchiefs (white), 4 nightshirts or pajamas, 8 socks (black cotton), 6 bath towels, 6 face towels, 1 trunk, 8 undershirts (summer), whisk broom, shaving mug, winter underwear, and athletic uniforms, shoes, and goods.

Cadets are required to wear the prescribed uniform. All articles of their uniform are of a designated pattern, and are sold to cadets at West Point at regulated prices.

DEPOSIT PRIOR TO ADMISSION

Immediately after admission candidates must be provided with an outfit of uniform, etc., the cost of which is about $160. This sum, or at least $100

thereof, *must be deposited with the treasurer of the academy before the candidate is admitted*. It is best for the candidate to take with him no more money than he needs for traveling expenses and for his parents to send the required deposit by draft, payable to the Treasurer, United States Military Academy. The deposit is credited at once to the cadet's account. Upon graduation a cadet who has exercised proper economy will have sufficient money to his credit with the treasurer of the academy to purchase his uniform and equipment as an officer.

PROMOTION AFTER GRADUATION

The attention of applicants and candidates is called to the following provisions of an Act of Congress approved May 17, 1886, to regulate the promotion of graduates of the United States Military Academy:

That when any cadet of the United States Military Academy has gone through all its classes and received a regular diploma from the academic staff, he may be promoted and commissioned as a second lieutenant in any arm or corps of the Army in which there may be a vacancy and the duties of which he may have been judged competent to perform; and in case there shall not at the time be a vacancy in such arm or corps he may, at the discretion of the President, be promoted and commissioned in it as an additional second lieutenant, with the usual pay and allowances of a second lieutenant, until a vacancy shall happen.

ACADEMIC DUTIES

There axe two terms of academic instruction: September 1-December 23, and January 2-June 4. A semiannual examination is held December 26-31, and an annual examination June 5-12. At the December examination cadets, who are found to be proficient in subjects they have completed during the preceding term are arranged according to merit in each subject. At the June examination they are similarly arranged and they are also assigned general standing in the class as determined by their standings in the various subjects. When a subject of study is completed during a term an examination concluding the work in that subject is sometimes held. Cadets deficient in studies at any examination are discharged from the academy unless for special reasons the academic board recommends otherwise. Cadets exceeding at any time the maximum number of demerits allowed for six months are reported to the academic board as deficient in conduct.

THE ACADEMIC CALENDAR

First term, September 1-December 23.
Second term, January 2-June 4.
Semiannual examination, December 26-31.
Annual examination, June 5-12.

DEPARTMENT OF TACTICS

ALL CLASSES

New cadets, upon reporting for duty, are given infantry recruit instruction, with gymnastic and calisthenic exercises, until they join the battalion.

Practical instruction is given during the summer encampment, and from September 1st to November 1st, and from March 15th to June 1st, in infantry, artillery and cavalry drill regulations, in target practice with the rifle, revolver, mountain gun and field gun, and in military engineering.

During the summer encampment, cadets of the third and fourth classes are also taught swimming and dancing, and those of the first class, the service of seacoast artillery and submarine defense at fortifications. The first, third, and fourth classes participate in exercises in minor tactics, practice marches, problems and practical field work, in which the employment of all arms is exemplified.

Practical instruction in fencing and gymnastic exercises and in boxing and wrestling is given to the fourth class from October 1st to June 1st, and to the other classes from November 1st to March 15th.

Instruction in riding is given to the first class during the encampment and from September 1st to June 1st, excepting the month of February; to the second and third classes, from November 1st to March 15th and also to the third class during the summer encampment. Instruction with English pad saddles is given to the first class, and in polo to the first and second classes.

During the academic season recitations in hippology are held for the first class and in drill regulations for the second, third, and fourth classes. Instruction is also given in writing orders and in solving problems involving the disposition of small forces.

Previous to graduation, lectures are given the first

class upon uniforms and equipments, and upon etiquette and customs of the service.

TEXTBOOKS

Infantry Drill Regulations, U. S. Army.
Field Artillery Regulations, U. S. Army.
Mountain Artillery Drill Regulations, U. S. Army.
Cavalry Drill Regulations, U. S. Army.
Elements of Hippology. Marshall.
Coast Artillery Drill Regulations, U. S. Army.

BOOKS OF REFERENCE

U. S. Army Regulations.
Field Service Regulations, U. S. Army.
Small Arms Firing Manual, U. S. Army.
Drill Regulations for Machine Gun, Infantry.
Drill Regulations for Machine Gun, Cavalry.
Manual of Interior Guard Duty, U. S. Army.
Manual of Physical Training, U. S. Army.
Regulations for Field Maneuvers, U. S. Army.
Manual of Instruction for Pack Transportation.
Regulations, U. S. M. A.

ISSUED TO FIRST CLASS BEFORE GRADUATION

U. S. Army Regulations.
Regulations for the Uniform of the U. S. Army.
Manual of Courts-Martial, U. S. A.
Army Register, U. S.
Engineer Field Manual.

DEPARTMENT OF CIVIL AND MILITARY

ENGINEERING

FIRST CLASS

The course in civil and military engineering and the art of war is confined to the first-class year.

The course in civil engineering begins September 1st and is completed during the first term, which closes with the Christmas holidays. It comprises brief treatises on the mechanics of civil engineering, framed and masonry structures, the materials of engineering, water supply, and sewerage.

The course in military engineering and the art of war begins on January 2nd and closes on the 3rd of June. Military engineering embraces the study of field and permanent fortifications and siege works. The art of war embraces the study of the organization of armies, employment of the different arms in combination, logistics, and strategy. To familiarize the students with its principles, lectures are delivered on military subjects and the principal operations of about twenty selected campaigns are studied. During this course the students are taken to the battlefield of Gettysburg to familiarize them with the effects of topography on the employment of troops in the field.

TEXTBOOKS

Civil Engineering. Fiebeger.
Field Fortifications. Fiebeger.
Permanent Fortifications. Fiebeger.
Elements of Strategy. Fiebeger.
Army Organization. Fiebeger.

Siege Works. Mercur.
Field Service Regulations, U. S.
Campaign of Gettysburg. Fiebeger.

BOOKS OF REFERENCE

Campaigns and Battles. Department.
Story of the Civil War. Ropes. Cambria Steel.

The department has a well selected reference library on civil engineering, military engineering, and the art of war.

DEPARTMENT OF NATURAL AND EXPERIMENTAL PHILOSOPHY

SECOND CLASS

The course in natural and experimental philosophy begins with and continues throughout the third academic year. Mechanics is studied during the first term. The text used is Gordon's *Mechanics*. Many of the principles are illustrated by apparatus in the lecture and section rooms, and the students are required to repeat and explain these experiments. The course aims to be as complete as possible with the limitation that it can be properly covered in a term of about 90 to 100 days by students having a proficient knowledge of the calculus; the treatment is sufficiently mathematical to furnish a confident basis for advanced work in the technical staff after graduation.

During the second term about 120 lessons are

allotted to this department. The first half of this time is devoted to the subjects of sound and light. The authorized textbook is Gordon's *Sound and Light*.

Astronomy is studied in the remainder of the second term. The text used are Young's *General Astronomy* and Michie and Harlow's *Practical Astronomy*. The principal aim of this course, in addition to its important value in educational development, is to furnish an ample basis for the establishment of stations in explorations and surveys.

The class attends daily throughout the year, except eight days, during which half the class attends daily.

TEXTBOOKS

Sound and Light. Gordon.
Mechanics. Gordon.
General Astronomy. Young.
Practical Astronomy. Michie and Harlow.

Numerous standard works on the general subjects covered by the course are available for reference.

DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS

THIRD AND FOURTH CLASSES

The course in mathematics begins with the fourth-class year and continues through the third-class year.

In the fourth-class year, algebra is completed in alternation; first with geometry, then with trigonometry. Plane analytical geometry is begun.

In the third-class year, plane and solid analytical geometry and descriptive geometry are completed in alternation. The calculus and least squares finish the course.

The course in algebra covers the entire subject as generally taught in colleges, but the student is expected to have already mastered elementary algebra to include the progressions and the solution of the quadratic equation. The course in elementary geometry includes the books that relate to the plane and those that relate to space, but the student is expected to have mastered the former. Plane and spherical trigonometry includes the complete solution of the plane and spherical triangles. The course in analytical geometry includes the discussion of the general equation of the second degree in the plane and the particular forms of the equation of the second degree in space.

Descriptive geometry includes the orthographic projections of the right line, the plane, ruled surfaces and surfaces of revolution, tangent planes and intersections of surfaces. It also takes the subjects of shades and shadows, perspective, isometric projections and spherical projections.

The course in differential and integral calculus covers the ground of the usual college textbook, including briefly the subject of ordinary differential equations.

TEXTBOOKS

Elements of Geometry. Phillips and Fisher.
Advanced Course in Algebra. Wells.

Quadratics and Beyond. Fisher and Schwatt.
Elements of Plane and Spherical Trigonometry. Crockett.
Logarithmic Tables. Newcomb.
Conic Sections, Coördinate Geometry. C. Smith.
Coördinate Geometry. Fine and Thompson.
Elements of Analytical Geometry (Solid). Smith and Gale.
Descriptive Geometry. Church.
Linear Perspective. Pillsbury.
Differential and Integral Calculus. Granville.
Integral Calculus. D. A. Murray.
Differential Equations. D. A. Murray.
Method of Least Squares. Johnson.

DEPARTMENT OF CHEMISTRY, MINERALOGY AND GEOLOGY

SECOND CLASS

This department embraces two branches of physics not included in its title, namely heat and electricity.

The course begins September 1st of the third academic year and extends throughout this year; exercises, recitations, laboratory work or lectures take place on all week days.

Commencing September 1st, general chemistry, alternating with lessons in heat, occupy the time until the close of the term in December, recitations or other exercises being had daily.

During this term all members of the class whose progress, as shown by their recitations, warrants it,

are given laboratory practice in chemistry. This practice begins with chemical manipulations and proceeds in the usual general order of elementary laboratory work. The laboratory exercises are one hour and fifty minutes long. It is generally possible to give all parts of the class some laboratory experience; the amount of this work, however, varies with the aptitude of the student from a few hours to forty-five or fifty hours.

This term closes with an examination upon the essential parts of the entire course, which all cadets who have not shown a required proficiency in daily work must take.

In chemistry the course is a descriptive general one, based upon a concise statement of the more essential principles of chemistry, and includes that class of information deemed most important to non-specialists, together with an accurate and logical treatment of many useful applications of chemistry.

The course in heat is short, but it is a comprehensive elementary course intended to embrace what is most applicable to subsequent work at the academy and what is most useful in general education.

Beginning January 2d the daily exercises alternate between geology, mineralogy, and electricity. This term also closes with an examination, covering the essential parts of the subjects studied during the term, which all cadets who have not shown a required proficiency in daily work must take.

The course in geology is a brief but scientific presentation of the essential elements of this branch of science.

The mineralogy is an eminently practical course consisting of the descriptive study and the practical determination of the important minerals. The lithological and palæontological part of geology is accompanied in study by the continued practical examination of the objects described.

The course in electricity is a brief exposition of the leading electrical phenomena and their relations to each other. It includes a study of the general principles of the subject and of the typical machines, generators, motors and transformers, together with the more important uses of electricity. The laboratory exercises give experience with a number of the machines and in the use of a great variety of apparatus employed in the numerous forms of electric measurements. In this term the laboratory work is a part of the electrical course and all cadets enter the laboratory. All laboratory work is performed under the immediate supervision of an instructor.

TEXTBOOKS

Elementary Lessons in Heat. Tillman.
Descriptive General Chemistry. Tillman.
Practical Chemistry. (Laboratory Guide.) Clowes.
Elements of Geology. Le Conte.
Important Minerals and Rocks. Tillman.
Elements of Electricity. Robinson.

During all terms standard works on the respective subjects are available for reference both to cadets and instructors.

DEPARTMENT OF DRAWING

THIRD AND SECOND CLASSES

The course in drawing extends through the third- and second-class years, attendance on alternate afternoons for a period of two hours during the full academic year.

The order of instruction is as follows:

Third Class Year	*Second Class Year*
1. Use of drawing instruments.	1. Elementary problems in third angle projection.
2. Problems in plane geometry.	2. Machine drawing, third angle projection.
3. Problems in descriptive geometry.	3. Assembly and working drawings from models.
4. Lettering. Exercises in this subject continue throughout the course.	4. Topographical sketching and drawing.
5. Building construction drawing.	
6. Isometric and oblique projection.	

Instruction is mainly through a loose-leaf system of

printed instruction sheets covering the various drawings and phases of the work. These are supplemented by short section-room lectures and blackboard illustrations when necessary. Personal instruction is given when needed.

DEPARTMENT OF MODERN LANGUAGES

THIRD, SECOND, AND FIRST CLASSES

The course in modern languages comprises instruction in French and in Spanish.

FRENCH

THIRD CLASS

Instruction is given in reading, in composition, and in conversation. The course opens September 1st, and continues until June 4th, some 219 lessons in all.

SPANISH

SECOND AND FIRST CLASSES

Instruction is given in reading, in composition, and in conversation, to which special attention is paid.

The course opens October 4th, of the second-class year and closes June 4th of the first-class year, 176 lessons all told.

The present textbooks are:

THIRD CLASS

French:— Martin's French Verbs.

Grammar. Essentials of French, François.

Elements of French Pronunciation, Jacobs. Bercy's La Langue Française.

Introductory French Prose Composition, François. Mérimée's Colomba.

About's Roi des Montagnes.

Marchand's French Idioms. L'Illustration. Lecture pour Tous.

Labiche and Martin's Voyage de M. Perrichon.

Daudet's Lettres de Mon Moulin.

Rostand's Cyrano de Bergerac.

Pattou's Causeries en France.

French Conversation Exercises. Military Reading.

Dupont's En Campagne.

SECOND AND FIRST CLASS

Spanish:— Spanish Grammar, Olmsted and Gordon. A Spanish Reader, Bramby.

Crawford's Spanish Composition.

A Trip to South America—Waxman.

Por Esos Mundos, monthly, published in Madrid.

"A B C," Spanish Daily Newspaper.

Spanish Conversation and Idioms, Department of Modern Languages, U. S. M. A.

Scientific and Technical Spanish Reader, Willcox.

Lecturas Modernas—Charles Alfred Downer.

BOOKS OF REFERENCE

French:— Cassell's French Dictionary.

Military Technical Dictionary. Willcox.

Spanish:— New Spanish-English and English-Spanish Dictionary, by Cuyás. Appleton.

DEPARTMENT OF LAW

FIRST CLASS

The course in law, which is carried throughout the entire first-class year, embraces the following subjects:

1. Elementary Law.
2. Constitutional Law.
3. International Law.
4. Military Law.
5. The Law of War.

The quiz method of instruction is employed in the section room. The authorized textbooks are supplemented from time to time by means of

lectures, and important principles are emphasized by requiring an examination and analysis of a considerable number of leading cases. Some time is also devoted to library work, with a view to familiarizing students with the use of a law library in the solution of practical questions. The purpose in view in the course is to give the student an elementary knowledge of the fundamental principles of law, with special emphasis upon those subjects a knowledge of which is essential to the proper understanding of his obligations and duties as a citizen and as an officer of the Army.

TEXTBOOKS

Elements of Law. Davis, G. B.
International Law. Davis, G. B.
Constitutional Law. Davis, E. G.
Military Law. Dudley.

BOOKS OF REFERENCE

The department has a law library of about 2,500 volumes, accessible to cadets.

DEPARTMENT OF PRACTICAL MILITARY ENGINEERING, MILITARY SIGNALING AND TELEGRAPHY

FOURTH, THIRD, AND FIRST CLASSES

Fourth Class.—This class is given an elementary course in the theory and practice of surveying,

instruction in this subject alternating with mathematics during the last 66 recitation days of the academic year. From May 1st to June 4th the entire morning is devoted to practical instruction in the methods of surveying and in the use and adjustment of instruments. During this period cadets apply in the field the principles and methods taught them in their theoretical study of the subject. The course includes instruction in the use of chains and tapes, in profile and differential leveling and in earthwork computations, in the use of compass, plane table, transit and stadia with special reference to the employment of these instruments in military topographic surveying. The slide rule used to facilitate the work of computation, and the principles upon which it is based are discussed during the theoretical course.

Third Class.—During the period of the summer encampment the cadets of this class receive practical instruction in military field engineering and military signaling. The course in field engineering comprises knots and lashings, rowing, construction of floating bridges with wooden pontoons, canvas pontoons and rafts, and instruction in military camp expedients. The course in signaling is limited to visual means only, including the flag, the heliograph, and the acetylene lantern. The International Morse Code is applied in the transmission of short messages both plain and cypher.

Simple exercises in topographic and hydrographic surveying are also given.

First Class.—During the summer months cadets of the first class are instructed in military reconnaissance and map making. This work follows close upon the

fundamental instruction in the same subject given in the Department of Drawing, extends the instruction in sketching to include road and position sketching, mounted and on foot, individual and combined. Demonstrations and limited instruction are given in the various processes of map reproduction.

In the fall instruction is given in all classes of improvised bridges and stream crossing, the use of cordage and tackle, erection of derricks, flagpoles, etc., and the use of explosives in military demolitions.

The spring course is on field fortification work including the principles of locating, tracing, and profiling field works, the construction of trenches, revetments, obstacles, head cover, splinter and bomb proofs. This instruction is arranged in a progressive series of exercises, resulting finally in the construction of a section of a simple infantry redoubt.

Military signaling is taught this class in both the fall and spring periods; the work covers the construction and operation of field-wire and buzzer lines and the radio-communication equipment.

TEXTBOOKS

Theory and Practice of Surveying (17th Edition).—Johnson—Smith.

BOOKS OF REFERENCE

Plane Surveying. Tracy.

The Engineer Field Manual. Office of the Chief of Engineers, U. S. A.

Signal Book, U. S. Army. Office of Chief Signal Officer, U. S. A.

The Slide Rule. Alexander. The Slide Rule. Clark.

DEPARTMENT OF ORDNANCE AND GUNNERY

FIRST CLASS

The subject of ordnance and gunnery is studied by the cadets of the first class throughout the academic year.

The course of instruction covers the principles involved in the construction and use of war material. It is broadly divided into three parts: the theoretical, the descriptive, and the practical. The theoretical part includes the study of the action of explosives, the study of interior and exterior ballistics, the theories of gun and carriage construction, and the principles of gunnery. The theoretical part of the course is not the same for all cadets, those showing the necessary proficiency taking a special course in the time devoted by the remainder of the class to review work.

The descriptive part of the course covers the processes of manufacture of powders, guns, projectiles, and armor; and describes the small arms, cannon, machine and rapid-fire guns in use in the United States service, with the carriages, ammunition and accessory appliances required for their service.

The department is well supplied with models, which are used in conjunction with the text.

The practical part of the course covers the operation of machines and appliances used in the fabrication of modern ordnance, the latter work being in effect a short but valuable course in manual training.

In connection with the course, visits are made to Watervliet Arsenal, where the process of gun construction is observed, and to the Ordnance Proving Ground at Sandy Hook, where actual firings from the several classes of guns are observed, including usually one or more shots against armor, and where the latest developments in war material are seen.

TEXTBOOKS

Ordnance and Gunnery. Lissak.

Exterior Ballistics. O'Hern.

Stresses in Wire-Wrapped Guns and in Gun Carriages. Ruggles.

BOOKS OF REFERENCE

Ballistic Tables. Ingalls.
Mathematical Tables. Newcomb.
Publications of Ordnance Department. U. S. Army.

DEPARTMENT OF MILITARY HYGIENE

THIRD CLASS

The course in military hygiene begins with the second academic year and consists of 13 recitations and 6 demonstrations.

The textbook used is Keefer's *Military Hygiene*; the instruction covers the essentials in the care of troops from the point of view of the line officer, particular attention being given to personal hygiene, transmissible diseases, post and camp sanitation, clothing, and the effects of alcohol and other narcotics.

Practical demonstration in the field is given of the methods of construction and operation of the various camp sanitary appliances such as latrines, water sterilizers, incinerators, etc.

Instruction in first-aid is given to cadets in small groups by practical demonstrations in the treatment of wounds, hemorrhage, fractures, drowning, poisoning, and other emergencies.

During the summer practice march, practical instruction is given in camp sanitation.

TEXTBOOKS

A Textbook of Military Hygiene and Sanitation. Keefer.

REFERENCE BOOKS

Military Hygiene. Havard.

Elements of Military Hygiene. Ashburn.

Practical Hygiene. Harrington.

DEPARTMENT OF ENGLISH AND HISTORY

FOURTH CLASS

The course in English and History begins with the fourth class in September and continues throughout the academic year, the whole class attending daily except Saturday. The class is divided into two parts, which alternate in reciting English and History.

In English, the course of instruction is planned to inculcate the essential principles of rhetoric, both by study of the textbook and by frequent practice in the various forms of composition (including practice in personal and official correspondence), to create an intelligent appreciation of the best in English Literature by the study of selected literary masterpieces, and to impart a knowledge of the important facts in the history of English literature and language by the study of a textbook and by lectures.

In History, the course of instruction is planned to acquaint the student with the political, social, and economic history of Europe from the beginning of the French Revolution to the present day, to make him familiar with the fundamental principles of civil government, with special reference to the United States, and to give him knowledge of various typical forms of modern national and municipal governments.

TEXTBOOKS—ENGLISH

English Composition in Theory and Practice (new and revised edition). Henry S. Canby and others.

Leading English Poets, Ed. by Holt.

Shakespeare's Works.

History of English Literature, by W. J. Long.

The Major Dramas of Sheridan.

Selections from Addison.

Selections from the Prose of Macaulay.

Selections from Stevenson.

TEXTBOOKS—HISTORY

The Development of Modern Europe, Vol. I. By J. H. Robinson and C. A. Beard.

Europe since 1815. C. D. Hazen.

Introduction to the Study of Government. Holt.

THE LIBRARY

Cadets and officers have free access to the library, which comprises over 95,000 books, maps, and manuscripts. The collection contains substantially all standard books on the subjects taught in the Academy and is especially complete in military subjects. Its card catalogues (about 338,000 cards) are arranged with the special object of saving the time of cadets. The library is open on week-days

from 8 A.M. to 7:30 P.M.; Saturdays from 8 A.M. to 9:30 P.M.; on Sundays and Holidays from 2 to 6 P.M.

(A. O., M. A., July, '16.)

SUPERINTENDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES MILITARY ACADEMY

NO.	Name.	Army Rank when Appointed.	Term of Service		
			FROM	TO	
1	JONATHAN WILLIAMS	Major, Corps of Engineers	April 15, 1802	June 20, 1803	R
2	JONATHAN WILLIAMS	Lieut. Colonel, Corps of Engineers	[8]April 19, 1805	July 31, 1812	R
3	JOSEPH G. SWIFT	Colonel, Corps of Engineers	July 31, 1812	Mar. 24, 1814	R
4	ALDEN PARTRIDGE	Captain, Corps of Engineers	Jan'y 3, 1815	July 28, 1817	R
5	SYLVANUS THAYER	Captain, Corps of Engineers	July 28, 1817	July 1, 1833	R
6	RENÉ W. DERUSSY	Major, Corps of Engineers	July 1, 1833	Sept. 1, 1838	R

7	Richard Delafield	Major, Corps of Engineers	Sept. 1, 1838	Aug. 15, 1845	R
8	Henry Brewerton	Captain, Corps of Engineers	Aug. 15, 1845	Sept. 1, 1852	R
9	Robert E. Lee	Captain, Corps of Engineers	Sept. 1, 1852	Mar. 31, 1855	R
10	John G. Barnard	Captain, Corps of Engineers	Mar. 31, 1855	Sept. 8, 1856	R
11	Richard Delafield	Major, Corps of Engineers	Sept. 8, 1856	9Jan'y 23, 1861	R
12	Peter G. T. Beauregard	Captain, Corps of Engineers	9Jan'y 23, 1861	Jan'y 28, 1861	R
13	Richard Delafield	Major, Corps of Engineers	Jan'y 28, 1861	Mar. 1, 1861	R
14	Alexander H. Bowman	Major, Corps of Engineers	Mar. 1, 1861	July 8, 1864	R
15	Zealous B. Tower	Major, Corps of Engineers	July 8, 1864	Sept. 8, 1864	R
16	George W. Cullum	Lieut. Colonel, Corps of Engineers	Sept, 8, 1864	Aug. 28, 1866	R
17	Thomas G. Pitcher	Colonel 44th Infantry	Aug. 28, 1866	Sept. 1, 1871	R

18	Thomas H. Ruger	Colonel 18th Infantry	Sept. 1, 1871	Sept. 1, 1876	R
19	John M. Schofield	Major General, U. S. Army	Sept. 1, 1876	Jan'y 21, 1881	R
20	Oliver O. Howard	Brigadier General, U. S. Army	Jan'y 21, 1881	Sept. 1, 1882	R
21	Wesley Merritt	Colonel 5th Cavalry	Sept. 1, 1882	July 1, 1887	R
22	John G. Parke	Colonel, Corps of Engineers	Aug. 28, 1887	June 24, 1889	R
23	John M. Wilson	Lieut. Colonel, Corps of Engineers	Aug. 26, 1889	Mar. 31, 1893	R
24	Oswald Ernest	Major, Corps of Engineers	Mar. 31, 1893	Aug. 21, 1898	R
25	Albert L. Mills	1st Lieutenant, 1st Cavalry	Aug. 22, 1898	Aug. 31, 1906	R
26	Hugh L. Scott	Major, 14th Cavalry	Aug. 31, 1906	Aug. 31, 1910	R
27	Thomas H. Barry	Major General, U. S. Army	Aug. 31, 1910	Aug. 31, 1912	R
28	Clarence P. Townsley	Colonel, Coast Artillery Corps	Aug. 31, 1912	June 30, 1916	R
29	John Biddle	Colonel, Corps of Engineers	July 1, 1916		

NOTE.—The selection of the Superintendents of the Military Academy was confined to the Corps of Engineers from the establishment of the Institution, March 16, 1802, till the passage of the law of July 13, 1866, which opened it to the entire Army. By the Act of June 12, 1858, the local rank of Colonel was conferred upon the Superintendent.

A DICTIONARY OF CADET SLANG

A. B., *n.* Area Bird, term used to designate one who regularly walks the area.

B. A., *n.* Busted aristocrat. Title given to a cadet officer who has been deprived of his chevrons.

B-ache, *n.* An official explanation of a report.

B-ache, *v.* To submit an explanation, to talk.

Beast, *n.* Name given to new cadets during their first few weeks at M. A.

Beast Barracks, *n.* Designation for the period of time a man is a beast: the first three weeks when he is quartered in barracks.

Bird, *n.* See A. B.

B. J., *a.* Literally means "bold before June"; as applied to a fourth classman who is impertinent and fresh.

Black Book, *n.* Regulations, U. S. M. A.
Blasé, *a.* Indifferent. Syn. B. J.
Bone, *v.* To study.
—— check book. To be economical.
—— dis. To try to avoid getting demerits.
—— efficiency. To be military for no apparent reason.
—— files. To strive for class standing.
—— make. To strive for chevrons.
—— muck. To endeavor to increase in brawn.
—— tenths. To study hard for a better mark.
Boodle, *n.* General term used to designate all eatables, contraband.
Boodler's, *n.* The confectioner's.
Bootlick, *v.* To curry favor obsequiously, to praise.
Bootlick, *n.* A "stand in."
Bootlick Alley, *n.* A street passing in front of the officers' tents in camp (off limits to plebes).
Brace, *n.* Term applied to muscular efforts of fourth classmen to look military.
Brace, *v.* To assume an excessive military position. Obsolete.
B. S., *n.* Loquaciousness; superfluity of talk.
B. S., *v.* To be loquacious.
Buck, *n.* Cadet in ranks; one who has no chevrons.
Bugle, *v.* To stand at the board all the period to escape reciting. (Not applicable to first-class year).
Bump, *v.* To deprive cadet officer of chevrons.
Butt, *n.* The remainder of anything, as the

butt of a skag; of a month.

Cit., *n.* A Civilian.
Cits., *n.* Civilian clothing.
Clean Sleeve, *n.* A cadet who has never worn chevrons.
Com., *n.* Commandant of Cadets.
Con., *n.* Confinement.
Corp., *n.* Corporal.
Crawl, *v.* To correct or rebuke someone (especially fourth classmen) in a severe manner.
Crawling, *n.* A rebuke.

Deadbeat, *n.* An easy job; one who deadbeats.
Deadbeat, *v.* To avoid some distasteful duty.
Dis., *n.* Discipline.
Dissy, *a.* Lacking in demerits.
Div., *n.* A division of barracks.
Doughboys, *n.* The infantry.
Drag, *v.* To escort a lady; to pull a man out of bed; to pull off a pair of white trousers.
Drag, *n.* A puff of skag.

Femme, *n.* A member of the fair sex.
Fess, *v.* To fail.
Fess, *n.* A failure.
File, *n.* A member of the male sex; one of the successive grades in military rank.
Find, *v.* To find deficient and discharge.

Flirtation, *n.* Flirtation Walk.
Formation, *n.* Any military function or military gathering.
Fried Egg, *n.* The crest of the U. S. M. A. used on the cap and full dress hat.

Gig, *v.* To report for a delinquency.
Gig List, *n.* The delinquency list.
Goat, *n.* A low ranking man in any subject.
Grind, *n.* A joke.
West Point Grind, *n.* A practical joke of the kind in which the victim sees no humor.
Gross, *a.* Lacking in intelligence.
Growley, *n.* Tomato catsup.
Growley, *v.* To blush.
Gum, *v.* To make a mistake.
Gumstick, *n.* One who is in the habit of gumming it.

Hell Cats, *n.* The U. S. M. A. detachment of field music.
Hell Dodgers, *n.* Active members of the Y. M. C. A.
Hive, *v.* To understand; to discover.
Hivey, *a.* Smart, brainy, able to understand things.

Ignorance and Gummery, *n.* Ordnance and Gunnery.

Juliet, *n.* A cadet who enters in July.

Laundry Spike, *n.* An especially long pin used by the laundry; a girl who works in the laundry.
Limits, *n.* The boundary beyond which a cadet may not go.
L. P., *n.* A person who is undesirable.
L. P., *v.* To give an undesirable task to anyone.

Make, *n.* A cadet officer.
Max, *n.* A perfect mark.
Max, *v.* To finish a job in a perfect manner.
Missouri National, *n.* A tune supposed to bring rain.
Muck, *n.* Muscle.

O. C., *n.* The Officer in Charge.
O. D., *n.* The Officer of the Day.
O. G., *n.* The Officer of the Guard.
—oid. A suffix added to a noun or a verb to denote the agent by which the action in the noun or verb is accomplished, *i. e.* Ridoid—one who rides; Hopoid—one who attends hops.

P., *n.* A Professor.
P. C. S., *n.* Previous condition of servitude. Occupation before entering.
P. D., *n.* Pennsylvania Dutchman.
Pipe, *v.* To look forward to anything; to build castles in the air.
Plebe, *n.* A fourth classman.
Plebeskin, *n.* A flannel blouse issued to new cadets. Very badly fitting.

Plebeskin, *n.* A report for hazing.
P. M. E., n. Practical Military Engineering.
Podunk, *n.* A cadet's home town. A name applied to any small town to denote its insignificance; a local newspaper.
Police, *v.* To discard; to relegate to the scrap pile; to throw from a horse's back; to clean up, as to police a room.
Poop, *v.* To memorize verbatim.
Poop, *n.* One who memorizes by heart.
Poop Deck, *n.* The balcony of the south cadet guard house, used by the officer in charge.
Pred., *n.* Predecessor; a cadet's forerunner in office.
P. S., *v.* To spoon on the post.

Quill, *n.* A person addicted to reporting cadets on every opportunity; subject matter for a report.

Recognize, *v.* To admit a fourth classman to the upperclass status.
Reverse, *n.* A position of disfavor, as to get a reverse on the tac.
Run-it-on, *v.* To take advantage of.

Scavenge, *v.* To acquire something that someone else no longer wants or has thrown away.
Skag, *n.* A cigarette.
Skin, *n.* A report for delinquency.
Skin, *v.* To report a delinquent.

Skin list, *n.* The delinquency list.
Slug, *n.* A disagreeable duty; an award of special punishment for some major offense.
Soirée, *n.* An unpleasant task or duty.
Soirée, *v.* To cause inconvenience or annoyance.
Speck, *v.* To commit to memory.
Speck, *n.* One who commits to memory.
Slum, *n.* Mess Hall stew (unknown ingredients).
Soundoff, *n.* A voice capable of being heard at long range.
Sound off, *v.* To bellow; to use the voice to the limit of its capacity.
Spoon, *v.* To court, amuse, entertain, or converse with a femme.
Spoony Up, *v.* To make neat or attractive.
Step Out, *v.* To hurry.
Sub-div., *n.* A subdivision of barracks: a cadet officer in charge of a subdivision.
Supe, *n.* The Superintendent.

Tac, *n.* A Tactical Officer.
T. D., *n.* The Department of Tactics.
Tarbucket, *n.* The full dress hat.
Tenth, *n.* The smallest division of the West Point system of marking.
Tie Up, *v.* To get a thing gloriously mixed up.
Turnback, *n.* A cadet who has been turned back to join the next succeeding class.

Walri, *n.* One who cannot swim.
Writ, *n.* A written review recitation.

Yearling, *n.* A third classman.

FOOTNOTES:

1
Fort Clinton was originally named Fort Arnold in honor of Benedict Arnold, but after his defection its name was changed. It stood in the N. E. corner of the Plain at West Point.

2
Fort Putnam was named for Colonel Rufus Putnam whose regiment, the Fifth Massachusetts, commenced it and did much toward putting it in shape.

3
The Sterling Iron Works are still in operation at Sterlington, N. Y., on the Erie R. R., where the remains of the Revolutionary furnace are still standing.

4
The Robinson House was situated on the eastern shore of the Hudson about two miles below West Point. It was built in 1750 by Beverly Robinson, a man of note and wealth. He had been a personal friend of Washington until the Revolution separated them, when he went to New York and raised a regiment known as the “Loyal American” for service under the British. He assisted Arnold and André in their negotiations. At the close of the Revolution, Robinson went to England.

This house was destroyed by fire, March 17, 1892.

5

"Fess" means a complete failure at a recitation. It is an abbreviation of "confess."

6

In the Philippine Department the preliminary examination will be held between December 1st and December 15th.

7

The board before which a candidate is directed to appear will be the one convened at the place nearest or most convenient to his home, or to the school at which he is in regular attendance at the time of appointment.

8

Major Williams resigned June 20, 1803, on a point of command, and pending its settlement until April 19, 1805, when he again returned to service as Chief Engineer, no permanent Superintendent of the Military Academy was appointed, the command devolving upon the senior officer of the Corps of Engineers present for duty.

9

Bvt. Major P. G. T. Beauregard, Corps of Engineers, by order of John B. Floyd, Secretary of War, relieved Colonel

Delafield, Jan. 23, 1861, from the superintendency of the Military Academy, but was himself displaced five days later, Jan. 28, 1861, by direction of the succeeding Secretary of War, Joseph Holt, the command again devolving upon Colonel Delafield.

Transcriber's Note:

TOC entry "VIII.—Growing Muscles 174" changed to read "VIII.—Growing Muscles 194" to match actual page.

Obvious printer errors corrected silently.

Inconsistent spelling and hyphenation are as in the original.

*** END OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK WEST POINT ***

Updated editions will replace the previous one—the old editions will be renamed.

Creating the works from print editions not protected by U.S. copyright law means that no one owns a United States copyright in these works, so the Foundation (and you!) can copy and distribute it in the United States without permission and without paying copyright royalties. Special rules, set forth in the General Terms of Use part of this license, apply to copying and distributing Project Gutenberg™ electronic works to protect the PROJECT GUTENBERG™ concept and trademark. Project Gutenberg is a registered trademark, and may not be used if you charge for an eBook, except by following the terms of the trademark license, including paying royalties for use of the Project Gutenberg trademark. If you do not charge anything for copies of this eBook, complying with the trademark license is very easy. You may use this eBook for nearly any purpose such as creation of derivative works, reports, performances and research. Project Gutenberg eBooks may be modified and printed and given away—you may do practically ANYTHING in the United States with eBooks not protected by U.S. copyright law. Redistribution is subject to the trademark license, especially commercial redistribution.

START: FULL LICENSE

THE FULL PROJECT GUTENBERG™ LICENSE

PLEASE READ THIS BEFORE YOU DISTRIBUTE OR USE THIS WORK

To protect the Project Gutenberg™ mission of promoting the free distribution of electronic works, by using or distributing this work (or any other work associated in any way with the phrase “Project Gutenberg”), you agree to comply with all the terms of the Full Project Gutenberg License available with this file or online at www.gutenberg.org/license.

Section 1. General Terms of Use and Redistributing Project Gutenberg electronic works

1.A. By reading or using any part of this Project Gutenberg electronic work, you indicate that you have read, understand, agree to and accept all the terms of this license and intellectual property (trademark/copyright) agreement. If you do not agree to abide by all the terms of this agreement, you must cease using and return or destroy all copies of Project Gutenberg electronic works in your possession. If you paid a fee for obtaining a copy of or access to a Project Gutenberg electronic work and you do not agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement, you may obtain a refund from the person or entity to whom you paid the fee as set forth in paragraph 1.E.8.

1.B. “Project Gutenberg” is a registered trademark. It may only be used on or associated in any way with an electronic work by people who agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. There are a few things that you can do with most Project Gutenberg electronic works even without complying with the full terms of this agreement. See paragraph 1.C below. There are a lot of things you can do with Project Gutenberg electronic works if you follow the terms of this agreement and help preserve free future access to Project Gutenberg electronic works. See paragraph 1.E below.

1.C. The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation (“the Foundation” or PGLAF), owns a compilation copyright in the collection of Project Gutenberg electronic works. Nearly all the individual works in the collection are in the public domain in the United States. If an individual work is unprotected by copyright law in the United States and you are located in the United States, we do not claim a right to prevent you from copying, distributing, performing, displaying or creating derivative works based on the work as long as all references to Project Gutenberg are removed. Of course, we hope that you will support the Project Gutenberg mission of promoting free access to electronic works by freely sharing Project Gutenberg works in compliance with the terms of this agreement for keeping the Project Gutenberg name associated with the work. You can easily comply with the terms of this agreement by keeping this work in the same format with its attached full Project Gutenberg License when you share it without

charge with others.

1.D. The copyright laws of the place where you are located also govern what you can do with this work. Copyright laws in most countries are in a constant state of change. If you are outside the United States, check the laws of your country in addition to the terms of this agreement before downloading, copying, displaying, performing, distributing or creating derivative works based on this work or any other Project Gutenberg work. The Foundation makes no representations concerning the copyright status of any work in any country other than the United States.

1.E. Unless you have removed all references to Project Gutenberg:

1.E.1. The following sentence, with active links to, or other immediate access to, the full Project Gutenberg License must appear prominently whenever any copy of a Project Gutenberg work (any work on which the phrase “Project Gutenberg” appears, or with which the phrase “Project Gutenberg” is associated) is accessed, displayed, performed, viewed, copied or distributed:

> This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project

Gutenberg™ License included with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.org. If you are not located in the United States, you will have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

1.E.2. If an individual Project Gutenberg electronic work is derived from texts not protected by U.S. copyright law (does not contain a notice indicating that it is posted with permission of the copyright holder), the work can be copied and distributed to anyone in the United States without paying any fees or charges. If you are redistributing or providing access to a work with the phrase “Project Gutenberg” associated with or appearing on the work, you must comply either with the requirements of paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 or obtain permission for the use of the work and the Project Gutenberg trademark as set forth in paragraphs 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.3. If an individual Project Gutenberg electronic work is posted with the permission of the copyright holder, your use and distribution must comply with both paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 and any additional terms imposed by the copyright holder. Additional terms will be linked to the Project Gutenberg License for all works posted with the permission of the copyright holder found at the beginning of this work.

1.E.4. Do not unlink or detach or remove the full Project Gutenberg License terms from this work,

or any files containing a part of this work or any other work associated with Project Gutenberg.

1.E.5. Do not copy, display, perform, distribute or redistribute this electronic work, or any part of this electronic work, without prominently displaying the sentence set forth in paragraph 1.E.1 with active links or immediate access to the full terms of the Project Gutenberg License.

1.E.6. You may convert to and distribute this work in any binary, compressed, marked up, nonproprietary or proprietary form, including any word processing or hypertext form. However, if you provide access to or distribute copies of a Project Gutenberg work in a format other than “Plain Vanilla ASCII” or other format used in the official version posted on the official Project Gutenberg website (www.gutenberg.org), you must, at no additional cost, fee or expense to the user, provide a copy, a means of exporting a copy, or a means of obtaining a copy upon request, of the work in its original “Plain Vanilla ASCII” or other form. Any alternate format must include the full Project Gutenberg License as specified in paragraph 1.E.1.

1.E.7. Do not charge a fee for access to, viewing, displaying, performing, copying or distributing any Project Gutenberg works unless you comply with paragraph 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.8. You may charge a reasonable fee for copies of or providing access to or distributing Project Gutenberg electronic works provided that:

- You pay a royalty fee of 20% of the gross profits you derive from the use of Project Gutenberg works calculated using the method you already use to calculate your applicable taxes. The fee is owed to the owner of the Project Gutenberg trademark, but he has agreed to donate royalties under this paragraph to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation. Royalty payments must be paid within 60 days following each date on which you prepare (or are legally required to prepare) your periodic tax returns. Royalty payments should be clearly marked as such and sent to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation at the address specified in Section 4, “Information about donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation.”

- You provide a full refund of any money paid by a user who notifies you in writing (or by e-mail) within 30 days of receipt that s/he does not agree to the terms of the full Project Gutenberg™ License. You must require such a user to return or destroy all copies of the works possessed in a physical medium and discontinue all use of and all access to other copies of Project Gutenberg™ works.

- You provide, in accordance with paragraph 1.F.3, a full refund of any money paid for a work or a replacement copy, if a defect in the electronic work is discovered and reported to you within 90 days of receipt of the work.

- You comply with all other terms of this agreement for free distribution of Project

Gutenberg™ works.

1.E.9. If you wish to charge a fee or distribute a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work or group of works on different terms than are set forth in this agreement, you must obtain permission in writing from the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the manager of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark. Contact the Foundation as set forth in Section 3 below.

1.F.

1.F.1. Project Gutenberg volunteers and employees expend considerable effort to identify, do copyright research on, transcribe and proofread works not protected by U.S. copyright law in creating the Project Gutenberg™ collection. Despite these efforts, Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, and the medium on which they may be stored, may contain “Defects,” such as, but not limited to, incomplete, inaccurate or corrupt data, transcription errors, a copyright or other intellectual property infringement, a defective or damaged disk or other medium, a computer virus, or computer codes that damage or cannot be read by your equipment.

1.F.2. LIMITED WARRANTY, DISCLAIMER OF DAMAGES - Except for the “Right of Replacement or Refund” described in paragraph 1.F.3, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the owner of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark, and any other party distributing a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work under this agreement, disclaim all liability

to you for damages, costs and expenses, including legal fees. YOU AGREE THAT YOU HAVE NO REMEDIES FOR NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY, BREACH OF WARRANTY OR BREACH OF CONTRACT EXCEPT THOSE PROVIDED IN PARAGRAPH 1.F.3. YOU AGREE THAT THE FOUNDATION, THE TRADEMARK OWNER, AND ANY DISTRIBUTOR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT WILL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ACTUAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES EVEN IF YOU GIVE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

1.F.3. LIMITED RIGHT OF REPLACEMENT OR REFUND - If you discover a defect in this electronic work within 90 days of receiving it, you can receive a refund of the money (if any) you paid for it by sending a written explanation to the person you received the work from. If you received the work on a physical medium, you must return the medium with your written explanation. The person or entity that provided you with the defective work may elect to provide a replacement copy in lieu of a refund. If you received the work electronically, the person or entity providing it to you may choose to give you a second opportunity to receive the work electronically in lieu of a refund. If the second copy is also defective, you may demand a refund in writing without further opportunities to fix the problem.

1.F.4. Except for the limited right of replacement or refund set forth in paragraph 1.F.3, this work is provided to you ‘AS-IS’, WITH NO OTHER WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR

IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PURPOSE.

1.F.5. Some states do not allow disclaimers of certain implied warranties or the exclusion or limitation of certain types of damages. If any disclaimer or limitation set forth in this agreement violates the law of the state applicable to this agreement, the agreement shall be interpreted to make the maximum disclaimer or limitation permitted by the applicable state law. The invalidity or unenforceability of any provision of this agreement shall not void the remaining provisions.

1.F.6. INDEMNITY - You agree to indemnify and hold the Foundation, the trademark owner, any agent or employee of the Foundation, anyone providing copies of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works in accordance with this agreement, and any volunteers associated with the production, promotion and distribution of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, harmless from all liability, costs and expenses, including legal fees, that arise directly or indirectly from any of the following which you do or cause to occur: (a) distribution of this or any Project Gutenberg work, (b) alteration, modification, or additions or deletions to any Project Gutenberg work, and (c) any Defect you cause.

Section 2. Information about the Mission of Project Gutenberg

Project Gutenberg is synonymous with the free

distribution of electronic works in formats readable by the widest variety of computers including obsolete, old, middle-aged and new computers. It exists because of the efforts of hundreds of volunteers and donations from people in all walks of life.

Volunteers and financial support to provide volunteers with the assistance they need are critical to reaching Project Gutenberg's goals and ensuring that the Project Gutenberg collection will remain freely available for generations to come. In 2001, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation was created to provide a secure and permanent future for Project Gutenberg and future generations. To learn more about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and how your efforts and donations can help, see Sections 3 and 4 and the Foundation information page at www.gutenberg.org.

Section 3. Information about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation is a non-profit 501(c)(3) educational corporation organized under the laws of the state of Mississippi and granted tax exempt status by the Internal Revenue Service. The Foundation's EIN or federal tax identification number is 64-6221541. Contributions to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation are tax deductible to the full extent permitted by U.S. federal laws and your state's laws.

The Foundation's business office is located at 41

Watchung Plaza #516, Montclair NJ 07042, USA, +1 (862) 621-9288. Email contact links and up to date contact information can be found at the Foundation's website and official page at www.gutenberg.org/contact

Section 4. Information about Donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

Project Gutenberg™ depends upon and cannot survive without widespread public support and donations to carry out its mission of increasing the number of public domain and licensed works that can be freely distributed in machine-readable form accessible by the widest array of equipment including outdated equipment. Many small donations ($1 to $5,000) are particularly important to maintaining tax exempt status with the IRS.

The Foundation is committed to complying with the laws regulating charities and charitable donations in all 50 states of the United States. Compliance requirements are not uniform and it takes a considerable effort, much paperwork and many fees to meet and keep up with these requirements. We do not solicit donations in locations where we have not received written confirmation of compliance. To SEND DONATIONS or determine the status of compliance for any particular state visit www.gutenberg.org/donate.

While we cannot and do not solicit contributions from states where we have not met the

solicitation requirements, we know of no prohibition against accepting unsolicited donations from donors in such states who approach us with offers to donate.

International donations are gratefully accepted, but we cannot make any statements concerning tax treatment of donations received from outside the United States. U.S. laws alone swamp our small staff.

Please check the Project Gutenberg web pages for current donation methods and addresses. Donations are accepted in a number of other ways including checks, online payments and credit card donations. To donate, please visit: www.gutenberg.org/donate.

Section 5. General Information About Project Gutenberg electronic works

Professor Michael S. Hart was the originator of the Project Gutenberg concept of a library of electronic works that could be freely shared with anyone. For forty years, he produced and distributed Project Gutenberg eBooks with only a loose network of volunteer support.

Project Gutenberg eBooks are often created from several printed editions, all of which are confirmed as not protected by copyright in the U.S. unless a copyright notice is included. Thus, we do not necessarily keep eBooks in compliance with any particular paper edition.

Most people start at our website which has the main PG search facility: www.gutenberg.org.

This website includes information about Project Gutenberg, including how to make donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, how to help produce our new eBooks, and how to subscribe to our email newsletter to hear about new eBooks.